

REFINITIV

# DELTA REPORT

## 10-K

ASTS - AST SPACEMOBILE, INC.

10-K - DECEMBER 31, 2023 COMPARED TO 10-K - DECEMBER 31, 2022

The following comparison report has been automatically generated

**TOTAL DELTAS** 3757

 **CHANGES** 325

 **DELETIONS** 1417

 **ADDITIONS** 2015

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
Washington, D.C. 20549**

**FORM 10-K**

(Mark One)

ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the fiscal year ended December 31, **2022** **2023**

OR

TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the transition period from to

Commission File No. 001-39040

**AST SPACEMOBILE, INC.**

---

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

**Delaware**

**84-2027232**

(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

**Midland Intl. Air & Space Port**

**2901 Enterprise Lane**

**79706**

**Midland, Texas**

(Address of principal executive offices)

(Zip Code)

**(432) 276-3966**

(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

---

(Former name, former address and former fiscal year, if changed since last report)

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

<b>Title of each class</b>	<b>Trading Symbol(s)</b>	<b>Name of each exchange on which registered</b>
Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share	ASTS	The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC
Warrants exercisable for one share of Class A common stock at an exercise price of \$11.50	ASTSW	The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC

Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: **None**

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. YES  NO

Indicate by check mark if the Registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Act. YES  NO

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant: (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. YES  NO

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the Registrant was required to submit such files). YES  NO

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer

Smaller reporting company

Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has filed a report on and attestation to its management's assessment of the effectiveness of its internal control over financial reporting under Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act (15 U.S.C. 7262(b)) by the registered public accounting firm that prepared or issued its audit report.

If securities are registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act, indicate by check mark whether the financial statements of the registrant included in the filing reflect the correction of an error to previously issued financial statements.

Indicate by check mark whether any of those error corrections are restatements that required a recovery analysis of incentive-based compensation received by any of the registrant's executive **officers** officers during the relevant recovery period pursuant to §240.10D-1(b).

Indicate by check mark whether the Registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). YES  NO

The aggregate market value of the voting common equity held by non-affiliates of the Registrant as of **June 30, 2022** **June 30, 2023**, the last day of the registrant's most recently completed second fiscal quarter, was **\$258,2372.6** million. The registrant has no non-voting common stock.

As of **March 28, 2023** **March 28, 2024**, there were **71,877,559** **138,132,310** shares of Class A common stock, \$0.0001 per value, **50,041,757** **39,747,448** shares of Class B common stock, \$0.0001 par value, and 78,163,078 shares of Class C common stock, \$0.0001 par value, issued and outstanding.

#### DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

None

---

---

**AST SPACEMOBILE, INC.**  
**FORM 10-K ANNUAL REPORT**  
**FOR THE YEAR ENDED DECEMBER 31, 2022** **2023**  
**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	Page
<b>PART I</b>	
<a href="#">Item 1. Business</a>	1
<a href="#">Item 1A. Risk Factors</a>	12
<a href="#">Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments</a>	37
<a href="#">Item 1C. Cybersecurity</a>	37
<a href="#">Item 2. Properties</a>	37
<a href="#">Item 3. Legal Proceedings</a>	38
<a href="#">Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures</a>	38
<b>PART II</b>	
<a href="#">Item 5. Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities</a>	34
<a href="#">Item 6. Selected Financial Data</a>	40
<a href="#">Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</a>	35

<a href="#">Item 7A.</a>	<a href="#">Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</a>	46 53
<a href="#">Item 8.</a>	<a href="#">Financial Statements and Supplementary Data</a>	46 53
<a href="#">Item 9.</a>	<a href="#">Changes in and Disagreements With Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure</a>	46 53
<a href="#">Item 9A.</a>	<a href="#">Controls and Procedures</a>	47 54
<a href="#">Item 9B.</a>	<a href="#">Other Information</a>	47 54
<a href="#">Item 9C.</a>	<a href="#">Disclosure Regarding Foreign Jurisdictions that Prevent Inspections</a>	47 54

### **PART III**

<a href="#">Item 10.</a>	<a href="#">Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance</a>	47 55
<a href="#">Item 11.</a>	<a href="#">Executive Compensation</a>	47 61
<a href="#">Item 12.</a>	<a href="#">Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters</a>	48 69
<a href="#">Item 13.</a>	<a href="#">Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence</a>	48 72
<a href="#">Item 14.</a>	<a href="#">Principal Accounting Fees and Services</a>	48 74

### **PART IV**

<a href="#">Item 15.</a>	<a href="#">Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules</a>	49 75
<a href="#">Item 16.</a>	<a href="#">Form 10-K Summary</a>	84 109

### **Certain Terms Used in this Report**

References in this Annual Report to “we,” “us” or the “Company” refer to AST SpaceMobile, Inc. (formerly known as New Providence Acquisition Corp.). References to our “management” or our “management team” refer to our officers and directors. Additionally, unless the context otherwise requires, references in this report to:

- “A&R Operating Agreement” refers to that certain Fifth Amended and Restated Limited Liability Company Operating Agreement of AST.
- “American Tower” refers to ATC TRS II LLC, a Delaware limited liability company.
- “Antares” refers to Antares Technologies LLC, a Delaware limited liability company.
- “AST Equityholders” refers to Avellan, Invesat, Antares, Vodafone, American Tower, Samsung, and Rakuten USA.
- “AST LLC” refers to AST & Science, LLC, a Delaware limited liability corporation.
- “AST LLC Common Unit” means a unit of ownership interest in AST LLC, which entitles the holder thereof to distributions, allocations, and other rights under the A&R Operating Agreement.
- “AST Options” refers to each outstanding option to purchase Existing AST Common Units granted pursuant to the A&R Operating Agreement.

AST Incentive Plan and the Prior AST Operating Agreement.

- “AT&T” collectively refers to AT&T Ventures Investment, Inc. and AT&T Services, Inc.
- “Avellan” refers to Abel Avellan.
- “Blocker Corporation” refers to a Blocker Corporation as defined in the Tax Receivable Agreement.
- “Board of Directors” refers to our board of directors
- “Business Combination” refers to the transactions contemplated by the Equity Purchase Agreement.
- “Bylaws” are to our Amended and Restated Bylaws.
- “Cellular Broadband” refers to cellular communications at 4G LTE/5G speeds.
- “Charter” are to our Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation.
- “Class A Common Stock” means the shares of class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share of Company.
- “Class B Common Stock” means the shares of class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share of Company.
- “Class C Common Stock” means the shares of class C common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share of Company.
- “Class C Share Voting Amount” are to the “Class C Share Voting Amount,” as such term is defined in the Charter, which is a number of votes per share equal to (i) (x) 88.31%, minus (y) the total voting power of the outstanding stock of SpaceMobile (other than Class C Common Stock) owned or controlled by Avellan and his permitted transferees, divided by (ii) the number of shares of Class C Common Stock then outstanding.
- “Closing” refers to the completion of the Business Combination.
- “Common Stock” refers collectively to Class A Common Stock, Class B Common Stock and Class C Common Stock.
- “Equity Purchase Agreement” refers to that certain Equity Purchase Agreement, dated as of December 15, 2020 and among AST & Science LLC, New Providence Acquisition Corp., New Providence Management LLC, the Existing Equityholder Representative and the AST Existing Equityholders.
- “Exchange Act” refers to the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended.
- “Existing Equityholder(s)” refers to the equityholders of AST LLC pursuant to the Prior AST Operating Agreement.
- “Invesat” refers to Invesat LLC, a Delaware limited liability company.
- “LEO” refers to Low Earth Orbit.
- “LTE” refers to long-term evolution.
- “MIMO” refers to Multiple-Input Multiple-Output
- “MNOs” refers to Mobile Network Operators.

- “Prior AST Operating Agreement” means that certain Fourth Amended and Restated Limited Liability Company Operating Agreement of AST.

ii

---

- “Public warrants” are to the warrants sold by the Company as part of the units in its initial public offering and additional warrants issued pursuant to the Warrant Agreement that trade with the outstanding public warrants.
- “Rakuten” refers to Rakuten Mobile Singapore PTE. LTD, a Singapore private limited company.
- “Rakuten USA” refers to Rakuten Mobile USA Service Inc., a Delaware corporation.
- “SpaceMobile Service” refers to the mobile broadband network that is expected to provide connectivity to standard unmodified, off-the-shelf mobile phones or 2G/3G/4G LTE/5G devices from the Company’s satellite network.
- “Sponsor” refers to New Providence Acquisition Management LLC, a Delaware limited liability company.
- “Stockholder Parties” refers collectively to Sponsor and the AST Equityholders.
- “~~Stockholders’ Stockholders’~~ Agreement” refers to that Certain ~~Stockholders’ Stockholders’~~ Agreement, dated as of April 6, 2021, by and among the Company and the Stockholders Parties.
- “Subsidiaries” refers to Subsidiaries as defined in the Tax Receivable Agreement.
- “Sunset Date” refers to the Sunset Date described in the Stockholders’ Agreement, which is the earliest to occur (i) Avellan’s retirement or resignation from the Board of Directors, (ii) the date on which Avellan and his permanent transferees beneficially own less than 20% of the Class A Common Stock that Avellan beneficially owns as of immediately after the Closing and (iii) Avellan’s death or permanent incapacitation.
- “Tax Receivable Agreement” refers to that certain Tax Receivable Agreement (“TRA”) dated as of April 6, 2021 and among the Company, AST LLC, the TRA Holders and Thomas Severson, as the TRA Holder Representative.
- “TRA Holders” refers to a TRA Holders as defined in the Tax Receivable Agreement.
- “Units” are to the units sold in our initial public offering, each of which consisted of one share of our Class A Common Stock and three-quarters of one public warrant.
- “Vodafone” refers to Vodafone Ventures Limited, a private limited company incorporated under the Laws of England and Wales.
- “Warrant Agreement” refers to that certain Warrant Agreement, dated as of September 13, 2019, between Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company and the Company.
- “2G”, “3G” and “5G” each refer to generations of mobile technology.
- “4G LTE” refers to fourth generation long-term evolution.

iii

---

#### **Cautionary Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements**

This Annual Report includes "forward-looking statements" for the purposes of federal securities laws that are not historical facts and involve risks and uncertainties that could cause actual results to differ materially from those expected and projected. All statements, other than statements of historical fact included in this Form 10-K regarding the Company's financial position, business strategy and the plans and objectives of management for future operations, are forward-looking statements. Words such as "expect," "believe," "anticipate," "intend," "estimate," "seek," "plan," "predict," "potential," and variations and similar words and expressions are intended to identify such forward-looking statements, but the absence of these words does not mean that a statement is not forward-looking. Forward-looking statements in this Form 10-K may include, for example, statements about:

- our strategies and future financial performance, including our business plans or objectives, products and services, pricing, marketing plans, operating expenses, market trends, revenues, liquidity, cash flows and uses of cash and capital expenditures;
- expected functionality of the SpaceMobile Service;
- the timing of the assembly, integration and results testing as well as regulatory approvals for the launch of ongoing tests on our BlueWalker 3 test satellite, Block 1 BB satellites;
- anticipated timing and level of deployment of satellites and anticipated developments in technology included in satellites;
- anticipated demand and acceptance of mobile satellite services;
- anticipated costs necessary to execute our business plan, many of which are preliminary estimates subject to change based upon a variety of factors, including but not limited to our success in deploying and testing our constellations of satellites;
- availability anticipated timing of launch windows by the launch providers and associated launch our needs for capital expected incurrence of future costs;
- prospective performance and commercial opportunities and competitors, including competitors who may have more resources than we do; competitors;
- our ability to continue to raise funds to finance our operations operating expenses, working capital and research and development activities, including our ability to raise capital in the public and private markets; expenditures;
- commercial partnership acquisition and retention;
- the negotiation of definitive agreements with MNOs and governmental entities relating to the SpaceMobile Service which would supersede preliminary agreements and memoranda of understanding;
- our success in retaining or recruiting, or changes required in, our officers, key employees or directors;
- our expansion plans and opportunities, including the size of our addressable market;
- our ability to comply with domestic and foreign regulatory regimes and the timing of obtaining regulatory approvals;
- changes in applicable laws or regulations;
- our ability to invest in growth initiatives and enter into new geographic markets;
- the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic;
- the possibility we may be adversely affected by other economic, business, and/or competitive factors;
- the outcome of any legal proceedings that may be instituted against us;

- our ability to deal appropriately with conflicts of interest in the ordinary course of our business; and
- other factors detailed under the section entitled "Risk Factors."

Such forward-looking statements relate to future events or future performance, but reflect management's current beliefs, based on information currently available. A number of factors could cause actual events, performance or results to differ materially from the events, performance and results discussed in the forward-looking statements. For information identifying important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from those anticipated in the forward-looking statements, please refer to *Item 1A-Risk Factors*. Except as expressly required by applicable securities law, the Company disclaims any intention or obligation to update or revise any forward-looking statements whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise.

## PART I

### Item 1. Business

#### Our Company

We are building the first space-based and only global Cellular Broadband network in space designed to be accessible directly by standard, unmodified, off-the-shelf mobile phones or 2G/3G/4G LTE/ everyday smartphones (2G/4G-LTE/5G devices using low band devices) for commercial use, and middle band spectrum controlled by Mobile Network Operators other applications for government use utilizing our extensive intellectual property ("MNOs" IP), and patent portfolio. Our SpaceMobile Service is being designed to provide cost-effective, high-speed mobile broadband Cellular Broadband services to end-users who are out of terrestrial cellular coverage. coverage using existing mobile devices. The SpaceMobile Service currently is planned to be provided by a constellation of high-powered, large phased-array satellites in Low Earth Orbit ("LEO"). The mobile traffic will be transmitted LEO using low band and middle band spectrum controlled by the SpaceMobile constellation and connected via high-throughput Q/V-band links to in-country gateways which are collocated with the MNOs' cellular network infrastructure. We anticipate that users will be able to connect to the SpaceMobile Service as if they were using a local cell tower. MNOs.

We intend to work with MNOs to offer the SpaceMobile Service directly to the MNOs' end-user customers. Our vision is that users will not need to subscribe to the SpaceMobile Service directly through us, nor will they need to purchase any new or additional equipment. equipment or mobile device. Instead, users will be able to access the SpaceMobile Service when prompted on their mobile device that they are no longer within range of the land-based facilities of the MNO

operator or and will be able to purchase a plan directly with their existing mobile provider. We generally intend to seek to use a revenue-sharing business model for SpaceMobile Service in our agreements with MNOs.

We believe the The SpaceMobile Service will is expected to be highly attractive to MNOs as it will enable them to improve and differentiate their service offering without significant incremental capital investments. The SpaceMobile Service is expected to enable MNOs to augment and extend their coverage without building towers or other land-based infrastructure, including where it is not cost-justified or is difficult due to geographical challenges, such as mountainous or rugged terrain. challenges. As a result of the incremental coverage created by the planned SpaceMobile Service, we believe that our MNO partners MNOs will have the opportunity to increase subscribers' average revenue per unit user ("ARPU") and help to reduce subscriber churn. enhance their return on invested capital.

On April 1, 2019, we launched our first test satellite, BlueWalker 1 ("BW1"), which was used to validate our satellite to cellular architecture and was capable of managing communications delays from LEO and the effects of doppler in a satellite to ground cellular environment using the 4G LTE protocols. 4G-LTE protocol.

We launched our BlueWalker 3 ("BW3") test satellite on September 10, 2022. On November 14, 2022, we and announced the completion of the deployment of the communication phased array antenna of the BW3 test satellite in orbit on November 14, 2022. On April 25, 2023, we announced that we had successfully completed two-way voice calls directly to standard unmodified smartphones using the BW3 test satellite. On June 21, 2023, we announced that we had achieved repeated successful 4G download speeds of above 10 megabits per second ("Mbps") to standard unmodified smartphones using the BW3 test satellite. On September 19, 2023, we announced that we had achieved repeated successful two-way voice calls directly to standard unmodified smartphones using 5G connectivity and successful download speeds of approximately 14 Mbps utilizing 5 megahertz ("Mhz") of low band spectrum via the BW3 test satellite. We intend to continue testing capabilities of the BW3 test satellite, including further testing with cellular service providers and devices.

We are currently in the advanced stages of assembling and testing our first generation of commercial BB satellites ("Block 1 BB satellites"). We are leveraging skills, know-how and technological expertise derived from the design and assembly of our BW3 test satellite in the development and assembly of our BB satellite platform. The Block 1 BB satellites will be of similar size and weight to the BW3 test satellite, includes our own designed array solar panels and battery systems, and will have ten times higher throughput than the BW3 test satellite.

We currently estimate we will transport the five Block 1 BB satellites from our assembly facilities to the launch site between July and August of 2024 to await a launch window. This launch window will be disclosed once a window can be agreed upon. The exact timing of the new launch schedule will be contingent on a number of factors, including satisfactory and timely completion of assembly, integrating and testing of the satellites, regulatory approvals, launch provider availability, logistics, weather conditions, and other factors, many of which are beyond our control. We have a contractual right under the launch services agreement to reschedule the date of our dedicated launch, subject to the launch vehicle provider's launch schedule availability and payment of a change fee.

We have commenced planning and procurement activities to begin the assembly, integration and testing of our second generation of commercial BB satellites ("Block 2 BB satellites). The Block 2 BB satellites are expected to be approximately 2,400 square feet in size, almost 3.5 times bigger than the Block 1 BB satellites, and will have the largest phased array ever deployed in a LEO for commercial use exceeding the phased array of the BW3 test satellite **in orbit**. On December 14, 2022, we provided an update with respect to certain BW3 test satellite performance and testing activities, including planned Block 1 BB satellites. We expect that the construction of Block 2 BB satellites will benefit from the advantages of a telemetry, tracking, larger aperture array and control network, implementation of our own AST 5000 Application Specific Integrated Circuit ("ASIC") chip. We believe the larger aperture array is expected to provide greater spectrum reuse, enhanced signal strength and increased capacity while ASIC chip is expected to enable materially greater throughput capacity of up to 40 MHz per beam to support up to 120 Mbps peak data rates and up to 10,000 MHz of processing bandwidth per Block 2 BB satellite, require less power and offer a lower overall unit cost. We have completed the design and have commenced the tape-out of our ASIC chip in March 2024. The first Block 2 BB satellite will be based on a field-programmable gate array ("FPGA") chip and future Block 2 BB satellites will use the ASIC chip. We have entered into an **end-to-end** agreement with a launch service provider to launch the first Block 2 BB satellite. The agreement has a launch window of December 15, 2024 to March 31, 2025. The exact timing of this launch is contingent on a number of factors, including satisfactory and timely completion of the design, assembly and testing of the **flight** control software of Block 2 BB satellite, regulatory approvals, availability of launch windows by the launch providers, logistics, and other factors, many of which are beyond our control. We have a contractual right under the launch services agreement to control communications array, testing patented doppler and delay hardware and software solutions, and reschedule the installation date of a ground network for end-to-end testing at various testing locations.

As of March 31, 2023, we are continuing our dedicated launch, subject to the initial testing in efforts to achieve Cellular Broadband communications between the BW3 test satellite and a standard/unmodified cellular phone. Following the completion of initial testing and after we have achieved Cellular Broadband communications, we plan to continue performing similar tests of these Cellular Broadband speeds with various MNOs internationally using the BW3 test satellite and a standard/unmodified cellular phone as well as other aspects of the SpaceMobile network, launch vehicle provider's launch schedule availability.

We are headquartered in Texas where we operate from multiple locations that include our corporate headquarters and 185,000 square feet of satellite assembly, integrating and testing ("AIT") facilities in Texas, and operate from multiple locations that include AIT and engineering and development locations elsewhere in the United States, India, Scotland, Spain and Israel. In December 2022, we established a new research and development center in India to support our global engineering and development activities. Our India research, development and engineering center will focus on research and development of next-generation hardware, software, space-related technologies and operations.

## Competitive Advantage

We believe our planned SpaceMobile Service will have the following competitive advantages:

**Large Addressable Market:** We estimate that the annual global market opportunity for wireless Our planned SpaceMobile Service is aimed at providing Cellular Broadband to mobile subscribers who are constantly moving in and out of coverage or live or work outside coverage, have no Cellular Broadband coverage, and have no connectivity or mobile cellular services is more than \$1.1 trillion, according coverage. According to Groupe Speciale Mobile Association ("GSMA") market data. As, as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, GSMA reports approximately 5.5 billion 5.6 billion mobile subscribers are constantly moving in and out of coverage, approximately 3.5 billion 3.4 billion people have no cellular broadband coverage and approximately 400.0 million people have no connectivity or mobile cellular coverage.

1

---

**Superior Interoperability and Service Quality:** Due to the combination Delivery of our innovative technology and the location of our LEO satellites, we believe that our SpaceMobile Service will have significant advantages versus other mobile satellite services. The SpaceMobile Service is designed to provide connectivity to any standard, unmodified, off-the-shelf 2G/3G/4G LTE/5G mobile phone using low and mid band cellular frequencies currently used by MNOs. This technology eliminates the need to purchase expensive, specialized equipment or to carry antennas. Furthermore, our communications array, which is currently the largest ever commercially deployed in LEO, is specifically designed to deliver Cellular Broadband speeds including voice, text, data and video services. Coverage at a Competitive Cost:

**Significant Coverage Advantages:** We believe wireless carriers MNOs and wireless infrastructure providers will integrate our Cellular Broadband coverage capabilities in order to more cost effectively deliver wireless services in hard to reach remote areas and other areas that experience coverage gaps and in rural areas which are prohibitively expensive as compared to cover existing technology. We also believe our SpaceMobile Service will enable wireless operators to reduce carbon emissions by enabling them to reduce the use of wireless infrastructure that uses distributed generators to power their infrastructure. In addition, we believe the SpaceMobile Service could be used as a back up in the event of a disruption of service to the MNO's terrestrial infrastructure due to a natural disaster such as a hurricane, civil unrest or a cyberattack.

**Cellular Broadband Directly to Unmodified Devices:** Our large phased array, based on our innovative technology, is designed to provide high speed Cellular Broadband including voice, text, data and video services directly to any off-the-shelf and unmodified 2G/4G-LTE/5G mobile device using low and middle band cellular spectrum currently used by MNOs. This technology eliminates the need to purchase expensive, specialized equipment or new mobile device or to carry antennas.

**Satellites Designed for Greater Great Functionality, Power and Redundancy.** The SpaceMobileOur satellites are designed to use patented, high-throughput modular satellite technology have the largest commercial phased array ever deployed in low earth orbit to distribute the functional capabilities of conventional satellites (power, thermal, navigation, communications) across many small, functionally independent and patented modules called Microns. The distribution of functionality across a large-area, low-volume and in-space structure maximizes surface area thereby materially enhancing the provide high speed Cellular Broadband for commercial use. Our large phased array aperture is

expected to provide greater spectrum reuse, enhanced signal strength and increased capacity, thereby reducing the number of the radio function while minimizing the total system mass. Another unique design feature satellites required to achieve service coverage as compared to smaller aperture satellites. Our custom developed ASIC chip is the attachment of solar arrays on the solar side of the array which eliminates the need for duplicative infrastructure. The distributed design is also expected to enable materially greater throughput capacity, including peak data rates of up to 120 Mbps per individual spot beam when utilizing 40 MHz of spectrum and two-way back haul capacity which could utilize up to 10,000 MHz of spectrum per satellite, require less power and offer a significantly lower overall unit cost. We believe our large phased array design and custom ASIC chip together with our expansive and technologically diverse intellectual property portfolio consisting of 3,350 patent and patent pending claims, including innovations in the SpaceMobile Service direct-to-cell satellite ecosystem from space to be able Earth, provide significant technological advantages to continue operations when a portion of the Microns or solar panels fail in space provide superior coverage and deliver high speed Cellular Broadband versus total loss which typically occurs on a conventional satellite, other direct to device satellite services.

**Cost Advantages due to Greater Control of our Manufacturing:** We believe that our significant investments in our manufacturing facilities and equipment, testing facilities including vibration and environment testing facilities, manufacturing processes, and supply chain provide us with a greater degree of control to manufacture our satellites in a timely manner and lower the overall

2

---

costs of our satellites. We own the IP and control the manufacturing process either internally or through third-party contract manufacturers for approximately 95% of all the sub-systems that will be used in our Block 2 BB satellites. We believe that having these intellectual property rights for the production of sub-systems significantly reduces our dependency on individual suppliers, better secures our supply chain, and lowers the overall cost of our satellites.

**Capability to Support Both Commercial and Government Applications on the Same Satellite or on a Singular Infrastructure:** We believe our satellites will be capable of supporting both SpaceMobile Service to end users of the MNOs and a variety of applications in the government sector. We believe that having satellites to support both commercial and governmental applications will enable us to better optimize and monetize the capacity and capabilities of our satellites.

## Our Strategy

We intend to build a SpaceMobile Service which leverages our technology to provide Cellular Broadband services to MNO end-user customers around the world using existing mobile handsets, devices, and for government use. The principle components of our strategy include the following:

**Develop Complementary Relationships with Mobile Network Operators.** We intend on partnering with MNOs to offer the SpaceMobile Service to their end-user customers. We believe the strategy will enable our MNO partners to expand the coverage areas of their operations and increase their total addressable market with limited incremental capital investment.

**Focus on Providing Wholesale Services to Mobile Network Operators.** In addition to seeking complementary relationships with MNOs, we will also seek to sell our services on a wholesale basis to MNOs who then offer this capability directly to their customer base. We believe this focus will enable us to avoid competing with existing incumbent carriers MNOs and reduce the complexity of our operations, thereby significantly reducing our overhead, marketing costs, customer acquisition costs, billing infrastructure and other customer support operations.

**Modular Deployment Schedule.** We plan to construct and launch satellites in phases to focus our constellation's initial power and capacity coverage on targeted geographical areas that provide the most attractive opportunities. This prioritization of coverage is designed to minimize the capital required to initiate commercial service and generate revenue sooner. Focusing on targeted geographical areas will also enable us to concentrate our resources on fewer regulatory and ground infrastructure initiatives.

**Continuing to Build and Leverage Relationships with Wireless Infrastructure Providers.** We have entered into agreements with wireless infrastructure partners and intend to leverage these relationships to provide the in-country ground infrastructure and telecom facilities necessary for our MNO partners to deliver the SpaceMobile Service to their customers. We also believe that these wireless infrastructure providers will assist us in developing innovative financing techniques to support our infrastructure roll out and help us identify and partner with MNOs around the world.

**Maintaining our Focus on Technology and Innovation.** We continue to focus on research and development to bring our SpaceMobile Service to market. market for commercial service to end user customers of the MNOs and for certain government applications. Our continued innovation in the development of our satellite system, components and related technologies and services are supported by a global engineering team of space scientists and consultants. We are also making steady progress in industrializing our component manufacturing and satellite assembly process to automate the assembly, installation and testing of satellites. We are also investing continuing to invest in scaling our procurement supply chain and inventory management processes which are expected expand our supplier base, increase the level of vertical integration for manufacturing our BB satellites to lower cost and increase reduce dependency on any single supplier, secure the timely supply of materials to meet the production volume of satellites. our satellites, and control costs. We protect our innovations by filing numerous patent applications and intellectual property registrations in the United States ("U.S.") and worldwide. We own most of the intellectual property we use. We also systematically monitor and review potential infringements on our intellectual property.

**Focus on United States Manufacturing and Intellectual Property Development Activities.** Our strategy is to manufacture, assemble, integrate and test our satellites primarily in our facilities in the United States. Our development of intellectual property portfolio and flight software are driven by our engineering and development centers in the United States. We intend upon continuing to expand and protect our intellectual property portfolio and register these patents in

the United States. We own the IP and control the manufacturing process, either internally or with contract manufacturers, for approximately 95% of the sub-systems planned to be used in our Block 2 BB satellites.

**Developing Relationships with Multiple Launch Vehicle Providers.** We are working on developing strategic relationships with multiple launch vehicle providers both in the United States and outside the United States to secure launch contracts that would meet both our target launch cost and our planned launch timelines for the BB constellation. Our BB satellites are designed to be launched in a variety of launch vehicles.

**Explore opportunities for variety of applications in government sector.** We intend to leverage our patented technology, including large phased array and high power capability of our BB satellites, for a variety of applications in the government sector. To this end, we have entered into an agreement with a prime contractor for the U.S. government to perform certain tasks and intend to seek to enter into other similar agreements with the U.S. government or prime contractors for the U.S. government.

#### **Technology Development Activities**

The industry in which we compete is subject to rapid technological developments, evolving standards, changes in customer requirements and Commercial Launch Activities continuing developments in the communications and networking environment area. We believe our ability to adapt to these changes and to develop the SpaceMobile Service will be an important factor in our ability to execute our business plan.

We conduct a majority of our engineering development activities by utilizing our global engineering team of space scientists and consultants to work with us on various aspects of our satellite system development efforts. Our engineering development activities primarily take place at development offices located in Maryland, Scotland, Spain, India and Israel as well as at our Texas assembly and testing facilities. In addition, we utilize third-party technology partners to assist in the development of our certain satellite technology.

#### **Satellite design**

As part of our strategy, we are designing aim to own and assembling control the IP of all major sub systems of our BB satellites, and design and assemble our own constellation of BlueBird ("BB") BB satellites. We plan to leverage are leveraging skills, know-how and technological expertise derived from the design and assembly of our BW3 test satellite in the development and assembly of our BB satellite platform. We are currently assembling the Our first generation of commercial BB satellites, ("Block 1 BB satellites"). We expect the Block 1 BB satellites, will be of similar size and weight to the BW3 test satellite, includes our own designed array solar panels and battery systems, and will have design improvements for enhanced power efficiency ten times higher throughput than the BW3 test satellite. Following the planned launch and throughput designed to increase capacity. We currently expect to launch five Block 1 BB satellites during the first quarter of 2024. The exact timing of the launch is contingent on a number of factors, including satisfactory

and timely completion of assembly and testing deployment of five Block 1 BB satellites and other factors, many of which are beyond our control. Following the launch, deployment and testing of five Block 1 BB satellites, in 2024, we currently plan to initiate a limited, noncontinuous SpaceMobile Service in certain targeted geographical areas, including in the United States, and seek to generate revenue from such service. Prior to initiating such service, we will need to obtain regulatory approvals in each jurisdiction where we would provide such service and would need to enter into definitive agreements with MNOs relating to the offering of such service in each jurisdiction.

We believe the deployment of Block 1 BB satellites and subsequent initiation of a limited, noncontinuous SpaceMobile service will help to demonstrate the advantages of a satellite-based Cellular Broadband service in the marketplace. This market activity may commence while we continue the development and testing of the next generation of our BB satellites, although there can be no guarantee that we will commence such activities.

### 3

---

Our next generation of commercial BB satellites, ("Block 2 BB satellites") are expected to derive greater performance through the introduction of our own AST5000 Application Specific Integrated Circuit ("ASIC") chip, which will provide materially greater throughput capacity, require less power and offer a lower overall unit cost. Block 2 BB satellites, are expected to be approximately 2,400 square feet in size, almost 3.5 times bigger than the Block 1 BB satellites, and will also have the largest phased array ever deployed in a LEO for commercial use exceeding the phased array of the BW3 test satellite and planned Block 1 BB satellites. We expect that the Block 2 BB satellites will benefit from the advantages of a larger aperture array which provides and our own ASIC chip. We believe the larger aperture array of the Block 2 BB satellites is expected to provide greater spectrum reuse, enhanced signal strength and increased capacity thereby reducing the necessary number of satellites required to achieve service coverage as compared to smaller apertures. We currently plan believe our ASIC chip will enable materially greater throughput capacity of up to 40 MHz per beam to support up to 120 Mbps peak data rates and deploy up to 10,000 MHz of processing bandwidth per Block 2 BB satellite, require less power and offer a significantly lower overall unit cost. The Block 2 BB satellites in are designed to provide SpaceMobile Service using both low band and middle band spectrum controlled by MNOs, however, the initial Block 2 BB satellites are designed to support low band spectrum only. We have entered into an agreement with a phased approach beginning in 2024 after launch service provider to launch the first Block 2 BB satellite during the launch window of December 15, 2024 to March 31, 2025. Pending the completion of the fabrication of our own ASIC chip, the first Block 2 BB satellite will be based on a FPGA chip. The exact timing of this launch is contingent on a number of factors, including satisfactory and timely completion of the design, assembly and testing of the Block 12 BB satellites. satellite, regulatory approvals, availability of launch windows by the launch providers, logistics, and other factors, many of which are beyond our control. We have a contractual right under the launch services agreement to reschedule the date of our dedicated launch, subject to the launch vehicle provider's launch schedule availability.

#### *Satellite deployment and coverage plans*

We are developing a phased satellite deployment plan and corresponding commercial launch plan of the SpaceMobile Service based on targeted geographical areas to provide the SpaceMobile Service to the most commercially attractive

MNO markets. This prioritization of coverage is designed to minimize the capital required to initiate and operate commercial service that generates

cash flows from operating activities sooner. We expect that such a successful commercial service would enable us to attract additional capital to continue to assemble and launch additional BB satellites to expand our capacity and geographic coverage area, although there can be no assurance that such capital would be available on terms acceptable to us, or at all.

We plan to achieve substantial service in the selected, targeted geographical areas with the launch and operation of 25 BB satellites and achieve substantial service in all targeted geographical areas to meet our long term business goals with the launch and operation of approximately 95 BB satellites. We anticipate launching and deploying additional satellites beyond the initial 95 satellites in order to enhance coverage and system capacity in response to incremental market demand. Continuous coverage is not expected to be available at all times in certain areas due to numerous factors, including number of active satellites in the region, latitude coverage range, and other factors. The timeline for the development and commercialization of our BB satellites has been, and continues to be, Our current plan is subject to numerous uncertainties, many of which are beyond our control, including satisfactory and timely completion of satellite components and assembly and testing of the satellites, availability of launch windows by the launch providers, our ability to raise additional capital, proposed orbits and resulting satellite coverage, launch costs, ability to enter into definitive agreements with MNOs, regulatory approvals, and other factors. Accordingly, we We may adopt a deployment and commercialization strategy for commercial launch of the SpaceMobile Service, including the nature and type of services offered and the geographic areas where we may launch such services, that may differ materially from our previous and/or current plans. Also, we will need to obtain regulatory approval in each jurisdiction to provide the SpaceMobile Services and our inability to obtain such approval on a timely basis, or at all, could impact our commercial launch plans. plan.

### **Customers, Sales and Marketing**

We have developed relationships with companies, such as Vodafone, Rakuten, AT&T, Google, American Tower, Nokia and others that have innovative technologies and products, skilled personnel, and potential end-user customers that complement our strategy. We believe that our business model is attractive to MNOs who will be able to augment and extend their Cellular Broadband coverage to customers without having to build additional towers, infrastructure, or purchase additional spectrum. In addition, we believe that the SpaceMobile Service will provide MNOs the opportunity to increase monthly ARPU through the sales of additional services.

We believe our patented technology leveraging our large phased array antenna could also be used in certain mission-critical communication capabilities in the government sector. We have entered into an agreement with a prime contractor for the U.S. government to perform certain tasks on our BW3 test satellite in orbit today and our planned next five Block 1 BB satellites.

The SpaceMobile Service is being designed to offer Cellular Broadband under our wholesale business model with MNOs. We expect the MNOs will market our SpaceMobile Service to their existing customers, who will be the ultimate end-users. We generally seek to negotiate a revenue-sharing model in our agreements with MNOs. As of March 31, 2023, To date, we have entered into over 3545 preliminary agreements and understandings with MNOs. Many of these preliminary agreements and understandings will need to be renewed as their terms will end before we expect to launch the SpaceMobile Service. Also, we will need to execute definitive commercial agreements with MNOs that will supersede these preliminary agreements and understandings before we can offer our SpaceMobile Service.

4

We expect that the MNOs will market and sell the enhanced coverage of the SpaceMobile Service directly to their customers and offer the service at a differentiated price to the current terrestrial coverage using the following illustrative service offerings, among others.

Service Offering	Service Offering Details
<i>Day Pass (Ad-Hoc)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Upon leaving the terrestrial cellular coverage area, mobile subscribers will receive a text on their phone asking if they would like to turn on the SpaceMobile Service.</li></ul>
<i>Monthly Add-on Subscription (Consumer)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Subscribers can pay a fixed monthly fee to add the SpaceMobile Service as a supplemental service to their current wireless plan.</li><li>Roaming onto the SpaceMobile Service's network upon entering an area without cell tower coverage.</li></ul>
<i>Monthly Add-on Subscription (Enterprise)</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Same as monthly add-on for consumers, but with more data targeting commercial enterprises.</li></ul>
<i>Standalone Get Connected Plan</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>In areas without cellular coverage today, subscribers will use and pay for the SpaceMobile Service as their primary network through an MNO partner.</li></ul>
<i>Aeronautical and Maritime</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Connect end users travelling in aircraft and vessels for Cellular Broadband service.</li></ul>
<i>Military and Government</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Service for military and governmental operations</li></ul>

5

We expect that the majority of our revenue will be generated from SpaceMobile Service offerings similar to those described above through revenue-sharing arrangements with MNOs; however, the ultimate offerings and pricing will be

subject to mutual agreement with the MNOs and there can be no assurance as to what model any MNO ultimately offers its customers and the level of customer acceptance of these models.

The operation of SpaceMobile Service will require mobile traffic to be transmitted by our BB constellation and connected via high-throughput Q/V-band links to ground station gateways which will be collocated with the MNOs' cellular network infrastructure. We also expect to generate revenue from the resale of gateway equipment for ground stations, installation and maintenance of ground stations, and other associated services to MNOs and other third parties.

### **Manufacturing, Assembly and Launch**

Our strategy is to ~~manufacture satellite~~ control the manufacturing and supply chain of the components used in our BB satellites, and assemble, integrate and test BB satellites primarily in our AIT facilities in Texas. We believe this strategy will result in a faster turn to market, greater control and lower overall costs. Our primary AIT facilities include approximately 185,000 square feet facilities in Texas for assembly and testing of our BB satellites, as well as an approximately 10,500 square foot facility in Spain for assembly and testing of avionics components and an approximately 33,000 square foot facility in Israel for assembly and testing of electronic components. We ~~have~~ made significant capital investments in buildings and equipment at our AIT facilities to manufacture ~~certain~~ satellite components at our facilities; streamline the assembly, integration and testing processes for BB satellites; and conduct various testing of satellites including vibration and environment testing at our facilities. ~~We currently have the capacity to produce up to two satellites per month, if required. Our goal is to continue to make additional capital investments to be able to produce up to six satellites per month to meet our future commercial launch and planned deployment strategy.~~

We ~~also~~ utilize a range of domestic and international contract manufacturers and vendors to manufacture specific components, subsystems, software and other electronic components used in our BB satellites. Some components, subsystems and services necessary for the assembly of our satellites are ~~currently~~ obtained from a sole source supplier or a limited group of suppliers. We have ~~made~~ investments in the design, development, and manufacturing processes and own the IP design of many of these satellite components and subsystems that are either manufactured by us at our AIT facilities or manufactured by third party manufacturers. In certain cases where we have invested or co-invested in the design and development of satellite components and subsystems but do not own the IP design, we generally have contractual restrictions on the third party manufacturers prohibiting the use of these design, development, and manufacturing processes for certain number of years to supply the same or similar satellite components and subsystems to any other third parties. We continuously aim to increase, where feasible, vertical integration for manufacturing of satellite components and subsystems at our AIT facilities to reduce our dependency on suppliers, ensure timely supply of satellite components and subsystems to meet our launch timeline, and lower the overall cost of BB satellites. We own the IP and control the manufacturing process, either internally or with contract manufacturers, for approximately 95% of the sub-systems planned to be used in our Block 2 BB satellites.

We are currently in the advanced stages of assembling and testing our five Block 1 BB satellites. The completion of five Block 1 BB satellites has been delayed as compared to our target completion timeline due to a delay in the commencement of integration and testing of five Block 1 BB satellites. The failure by suppliers of two key subsystems to meet their contractual delivery timelines contributed to this delay. To mitigate such risks in the future and reduce our dependency on these suppliers, we have reached an agreement with the supplier of one of the subsystems and obtained a non-exclusive and worldwide license of the design and manufacturing rights of this subsystem for use in our Block 2 BB

satellites. We have also replaced the supplier of the other subsystem with a new supplier with whom we have completed a new design and own the IP of this subsystem. The new supplier will manufacture and supply this subsystem for use in our Block 2 BB satellites at a cost that is expected to be materially lower than the current cost of this subsystem. We expect these subsystems to not delay the timely completion of future BB satellites.

We currently estimate we will transport the five Block 1 BB satellites from our assembly facilities to the launch site between July and August of 2024 to await a launch window. This launch window will be disclosed once a window can be agreed upon. The exact timing of the new launch schedule will be contingent on a number of factors, including satisfactory and timely completion of assembly, integrating and testing of the satellites, regulatory approvals, launch provider availability, logistics, weather conditions, and other factors, many of which are beyond our control. We have a contractual right under the launch services agreement to reschedule the date of our dedicated launch, subject to the launch vehicle provider's launch schedule availability and payment of a change fee.

We are also designing and developing our own ASIC chip. We believe the introduction of ASIC chip in our Block 2 BB satellites will enable materially greater throughput capacity of up to 40 MHz per beam to support 120 Mbps peak data rates and up to 10,000 MHz of processing bandwidth per Block 2 BB satellite, require less power and offer a lower overall unit cost. We have invested a substantial amount in completing the design of the ASIC chip and we own the IP of our ASIC chip. We have entered into an agreement with a leading semiconductor manufacturer for tape-out and fabrication of our ASIC chip. The tape-out of our ASIC chip commenced in March 2024.

We continue to make progress towards the completion of the design and development of our Block 2 BB satellites. We believe we will benefit from the skills, technological expertise, and manufacturing know-how derived from the assembly and testing of our Block 1 BB satellite in the development and assembly of our Block 2 BB satellites. We began the design and development of the Block 2 BB satellites prior to the design and development of Block 1 BB satellites. We have commenced planning and procurement activities to begin the assembly, integration and testing of the Block 2 BB satellites and have entered into agreements and placed orders for procurement of critical and long lead materials required for manufacturing the satellite components, and subsystems required for the assembly of Block 1 BB satellites. In addition, we have also entered into agreements for design and development of various critical and long lead materials required for manufacturing the satellite components and subsystems for Block 2 BB satellites as soon as the assembly and testing of Block 1 BB satellites are complete.

We have entered into a Launch Services Agreement and are actively involved in discussions with SpaceX relating to various launch vehicle providers both in the U.S and outside the U.S to secure dedicated launch for our BB satellites. We are working with multiple launch vehicle providers for technical assessment of the accommodating maximum number of BB satellites in their launch vehicles. The five Block 1 BB satellites are scheduled to be launched in a dedicated launch vehicle from within the U.S. We have entered into an agreement with a launch service provider to launch the first

Block 2 BB satellite. The agreement has a launch window of December 15, 2024 to March 31, 2025. We generally have contractual rights in our launch agreements to reschedule the launch window or the date of the dedicated launch, subject to the launch vehicle provider's launch schedule availability and payment of a change fee. The exact timing of the launch, which is expected to carry five Block 1 BB satellites, our launches is contingent on a number of factors, including satisfactory and timely completion of production the design, assembly and testing of Block 1 the BB satellites, regulatory approvals, availability of launch windows by the launch providers, logistics, and other factors, many of which are beyond our control. We are also actively engaged in discussions with several launch providers for launch of our Block 2 BB satellites.

### **Satellite Technology Development**

The industry in which we compete is subject to rapid technological developments, evolving standards, changes in customer requirements and continuing developments in the communications and networking environment area. We believe our ability to adapt to these changes, and to develop the SpaceMobile Service and the related components, will be an important factor in our ability to execute our business plan.

We conduct a majority of our engineering development activities by utilizing our global engineering team of space scientists and consultants to work with us on various aspects of our satellite system development efforts. Our engineering development activities

5

---

primarily take place at development offices located in Maryland, Scotland, Spain and Israel as well as at our Texas assembly and testing facilities. In December 2022, we established a new research and development center in India to support our global engineering and development activities. Our India research, development and engineering center will focus on research and development of next-generation hardware, software, space-related technologies and operations. In addition, we utilize third-party technology partners to assist in the development of our satellite technology, including our satellite mechanical design and the design of our electronics.

### **Government Regulations**

We are required to comply with the laws and regulations of, and often obtain approvals from, national and local authorities in connection with our services. As we launch service to additional countries and regions, we will become subject to additional governmental approvals and regulations. We will provide a number of services that rely on the use of radio-frequency spectrum, and the provision of such services is highly regulated. Satellites must be operated in a manner consistent with the regulations and procedures of the International Telecommunication Union ("ITU"), a specialized agency of the United Nations, which require the coordination of the operation of satellite systems in certain circumstances, and more generally are intended to avoid the occurrence of harmful interference among different users of the radio spectrum.

Our business is subject to extensive rules, regulations, statutes, orders and policies imposed by the government in the United States and in foreign jurisdictions. For example, in the U.S. commercial use of radio-frequency spectrum is subject to the jurisdiction of the Federal Communications Commission ("FCC") under the Communications Act of 1934, as amended. The FCC is responsible for authorizing the operation of commercial spacecraft, and also authorizes non-U.S.

licensed spacecraft to be used to serve the United States. The FCC also licenses the operation of satellite earth stations and regulates the technical and other aspects of the operation of these facilities.

The SpaceMobile Service in the United States is subject to a pending Amendment to Petition for Declaration Declaratory Ruling and accompanying application ("PDR Amendment Application") before the FCC, seeking market access requesting authority to launch and permit the commercial operation of a foreign satellite in United States territory in Non-Geostationary Orbit ("NGSO") satellite system employing V-band frequencies. The PDR Amendment Application seeks authority to utilize 243248 satellites operating in 1617 orbital planes in of which 243 satellites will operate at an approximate 730-740 kilometers and the remaining five satellites will operate from a lower altitude of 700 approximately 515-525 kilometers. The PDR Amendment Application for satellite space station authorization has been accepted for filing and is under consideration by the FCC. Third parties have filed letters of support for, and of opposition to, our PDR Application. We expect that, if approved, the FCC will apply routine conditions to a license grant of authority authorizing market access pursuant to our PDR, including launch and operation milestones for the NGSO satellite system that we must comply with. If we change the operational parameters of our satellites, we will need to file a supplemental application to modify our license with the FCC and obtain affirmative consent before undertaking such modifications. If we do not meet the launch and operation milestones set out in our grant, once obtained, we risk losing a portion of our surety bond for failure to meet all milestones.

Because the SpaceMobile Service will communicate with end users using satellites transmitting on spectrum traditionally licensed to MNOs, in the U.S. we also will need the approval of the FCC's Wireless Telecommunications Bureau, which handles terrestrial wireless licensing. We intend to seek this approval in connection with an have a lease agreement with a terrestrial MNO with which we have a cooperative arrangement. AT&T, Inc. ("AT&T") and complementary application to provide Supplemental Coverage from Space ("SCS") services pending before the FCC to authorize service links to end users and anticipate that the FCC will process this application in due course after addressing the pending Amendment Application. Other parties have indicated that they may oppose this approval on procedural and substantive grounds.

We have an experimental license licenses with the FCC that permits permit the testing of the BW3 test satellite in LTE frequencies in multiple locations in the United States and permits the testing of V-band ground stations in Texas and Hawaii in connection therewith. We

---

are required to comply with operational and coordination requirements set forth as conditions to the experimental license grant. Material changes to the experimental license testing parameters would require prior approval by the FCC.

We also will need to secure FCC authority in the future for the ground segment of the SpaceMobile Service, consisting of approximately three four fixed earth stations located in the United States. Earth station licenses generally are granted for 15-year terms, and typically are renewed in the ordinary course. Material changes in earth station operations would

require prior approval by the FCC. The operation of our earth stations is subject to various license conditions, as well as the technical and operational requirements of the FCC's rules and regulations.

We are also seeking regulatory approval for fixed earth stations in other jurisdictions around the world to operate satellite earth stations in connection with our service, including in connection with BW3 testing. Also, we are seeking regulatory approval to permit the commercial operation of our satellites using V-band and cellular frequencies in foreign jurisdictions where we intend to operate. If we are unable to obtain such regulatory approvals, we would not be able to operate in those jurisdictions. With respect to the BW3 test satellite, we have contracted with third parties to permit the usage of UHF and S-band frequencies for telemetry, tracking and control ("TT&C") in jurisdictions outside of the United States. We intend to contract with third parties for the usage of UHF and S-band frequencies in jurisdictions outside of the United States in connection with the commercial operation of the SpaceMobile Service.

6

---

The SpaceMobile Service will also operate under filings made by Papua New Guinea the United States with the ITU and Papua New Guinea has issued a Radiocommunications Apparatus License to enable us to operate our satellite system. The orbital location and frequencies for our satellites are subject to the ITU's regulations, including its frequency registration and coordination procedures, and its various provisions on spectrum usage. Those procedures are specified in the ITU Radio Regulations and seek to facilitate shared international use of limited spectrum and orbital resources in a manner that avoids harmful interference. Among other things, the ITU regulations set forth procedures for establishing international priority with respect to the use of such resources, deadlines for bringing satellite networks into use in order to maintain such priority, and coordination rights and obligations with respect to other networks, which vary depending on whether such networks have higher or lower ITU priority. Further licensing by Papua New Guinea the United States may be required if material changes to the SpaceMobile Service are made. We expect to continue to register each of our satellites after launch with the United Nations Register of Objects Launched Into Outer Space via a European country where we have operations. Space.

Government regulators, including the FCC, have adopted expansive views of the scope of their regulatory authority over common carriers providing Cellular Broadband and are increasingly focused on the quality of service, customer disclosures, customer privacy, and the customer support that wireless carriers provide. These include, but are not limited to, common carrier obligations; universal service obligations; rules governing billing and the pass through of third party charges, regulations governing subscriber privacy and customer proprietary network information; access to E911 and location accuracy requirements; roaming obligations; rules that require wireless service providers to configure their networks to facilitate electronic surveillance by law enforcement officials; emergency warning requirements; rules governing spam, telemarketing and truth-in-billing; outage reporting; open Internet and Net neutrality requirements; cybersecurity and rules requiring the offering of equipment and services that are accessible to and usable by persons with disabilities, among others. Although we do not currently expect that SpaceMobile will be subject to common carrier obligations and regulations, SpaceMobile's MNO partners may be subject to the conditions described above.

On March 16, 2023 March 14, 2024, the FCC adopted a Notice of Proposed Rulemaking seeking comment on First Report & Order to implement a new regulatory framework for Supplemental Coverage from Space ("SCS"), SCS, which would

allow allows satellite operators to collaborate with terrestrial service providers to expand coverage to terrestrial licensee subscribers. Comments will be due 30 days after We view the date of publication in the Federal Register. If approved in its current form with some modifications, we believe that it will create initial SCS rules as creating a favorable regulatory framework for the satellite-to-device services industry.

## Intellectual Property

Our intellectual property ("IP") portfolio is expansive and technologically diverse, containing numerous and various innovations of the direct-to-cell satellite ecosystem from space to Earth. Our IP portfolio consists of 32 36 patent families worldwide. To date, we have secured 15 31 granted United States patents, one of which is exclusively licensed to us, and at least 74 United States patent applications that have been indicated as allowable and ready for issue pending completion of patent office formalities. We also have approximately 24 31 currently pending United States patent applications. Moreover, we have secured 79 granted international patents providing protection in 15 17 different countries, including Europe, Australia, Canada, India, Japan, and South Korea, and 24 patent applications in Australia and South Korea that have been indicated as allowable and ready for issue pending completion of patent office formalities. We have approximately 62 72 pending international patent applications in the countries noted above Canada and India, as well as under the Patent Cooperation Treaty. In total, as of March 31, 2023 April 1, 2024, we have more than 2,600 3,350 patent and patent pending claims worldwide, of which approximately 800 1,050 have been officially granted or allowed.

---

We seek to establish and maintain our proprietary rights in our technology and products through a combination of patents, copyrights, trademarks, trade secrets and contractual rights. We also seek to maintain our trade secrets and confidential information through nondisclosure policies, the use of appropriate confidentiality agreements and other security measures. We maintain IP infringement enforcement and defense insurance (current coverage of \$7.0 million for defending infringement claims and \$10.0 million to bring offensive infringement claims). We have filed or registered a number of patents and trademarks in the United States and in other countries and have a number of patent filings pending. There can be no assurance, however, that these rights can be successfully enforced against competitors or competitive products in any particular jurisdiction. Although we believe the protection afforded by our patents, copyrights, trademarks, trade secrets and contracts has incredible value, the rapidly changing technology in the satellite and wireless communications industries and uncertainties in the legal process make our future success dependent on the innovative skills, technological expertise and management abilities of our employees.

Certain of our products include software or other intellectual property licensed from third parties. While it may be necessary in the future to seek or renew licenses relating to various aspects of our products, we believe, based upon past experience and standard industry practice, that such licenses generally could be obtained on commercially reasonable

terms. Nonetheless, there can be no assurance that the necessary licenses would be available on acceptable terms, if at all.

7

---

The industry in which we compete is characterized by rapidly changing technology, a large number of patents, and related litigation regarding patent and other intellectual property rights. We cannot assure you that our patents and other proprietary rights will not be challenged, invalidated or circumvented, that others will not assert intellectual property rights to technologies that are relevant, or that our rights will give us a competitive advantage. In addition, the laws of some foreign countries may not protect our proprietary rights to the same extent as the laws of the United States.

### **Competition**

The mobile satellite services industry at-large is highly competitive but has significant barriers to entry, including the cost and difficulty associated with successfully developing, building and launching a satellite network and obtaining various governmental and regulatory approvals. In addition to cost, there is a significant amount of lead time associated with obtaining the required licenses, building and launching the satellite constellation, and developing and deploying the ground network technology. We currently face **substantial** competition from other service providers that offer a range of mobile and fixed communications options. There are also a number of competitors working to develop innovative solutions to compete in this industry, many of which are more established providers or have significantly greater resources than we do. In addition, while we view our services as largely complementary to terrestrial wireline and wireless communications networks through our MNO partnerships, we also compete with them indirectly.

We face competition from existing service providers such as Inmarsat, Globalstar, ORBCOMM, Thuraya Telecommunications Co. and Iridium Communications that offer a range of mobile and fixed communications options. In the case of fixed broadband operators, a VSAT end-user terminal is used to provide service while with mobile satellite service providers a special purpose satellite phone is required. In addition, we face competition from companies developing new LEO networks such as SpaceX's Starlink, OneWeb and Amazon's Kuiper. In 2023, Apple introduced a new service supported by Globalstar which provides SOS Emergency Service capabilities to its latest generation iPhones. In September 2022, SpaceX and T-Mobile US announced that they plan to offer a text based service from a constellation that will be built in the future. We believe the planned SpaceMobile Service will compete with the direct to device segment of the mobile satellite service sector by providing the ability to support Cellular Broadband data rates, utilize existing unmodified handsets and operate in virtually all of the low to mid band spectrums used by MNOs today. In comparison, the **recently announced** mobile satellite service LEOs are designed to support low data rate applications such as SOS, texting and in some instances, voice.

We also compete with regional mobile satellite communications services in several geographic markets. In these cases, the majority of our competitors' customers require regional, not global, mobile voice and data services, so competitors may present a viable alternative to the SpaceMobile Service. These regional competitors operate or plan to operate geostationary satellites. In some markets, we compete directly or indirectly with very small aperture terminal operators that offer communications services through private networks using very small aperture terminals or hybrid systems to target business users. We also compete indirectly with terrestrial wireline and wireless communications networks and to the extent that terrestrial communications companies invest in underdeveloped areas, we may face increased competition in those areas.

## **Environmental, Health and Safety**

We are subject to various laws and regulations relating to the protection of the environment and human health and safety, including those governing the management, storage and disposal of hazardous materials, such as fuels and batteries, which may contain hazardous materials. Certain environmental laws, such as the U.S. Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and

9

---

Liability Act of 1980, as amended ("CERCLA"), impose joint and several liability, without regard to fault, for cleanup costs on persons who disposed of or released hazardous substances into the environment, including at third-party sites or offsite disposal locations, or those who currently own or operate (or formerly owned or operated) sites where such a release occurred. In addition to clean-up actions brought by federal, state, local and foreign governmental entities, private parties could raise personal injury or other claims against us due to the presence of, or exposure to, hazardous materials on, from or otherwise relating to such a property.

Also, our operation of satellites will be regulated by various jurisdictions over which our satellites will travel, as well as those jurisdictions in which we enter or return to the earth's atmosphere and land (including through unintentional landings), though complete destructive atmosphere reentry of each satellite is anticipated. We could incur significant costs, including cleanup costs, fines, sanctions and third-party claims, as a result of violations of or in connection with liabilities under environmental laws and regulations.

8

---

## **Human Capital Management**

As of **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**, we had approximately **342** **489** employees and consultants worldwide, which included approximately **180** **272** employees and consultants in the U.S. and approximately **162** **217** in other jurisdictions, primarily Scotland, Spain, **India** and Israel. We view the strength of our leadership team and our talented colleagues around the world as a critical component of our future success. In certain countries in which we operate, we are subject to, and comply with, local labor law requirements, which may automatically make our employees subject to industry-wide collective bargaining agreements. None of our U.S. employees are subject to any collective bargaining agreement. Generally, each employee is required to sign a confidentiality, non-disclosure and non-use agreement with us. We have not experienced any work stoppages and consider our relations with our employees to be good.

We consider our talent to be very important to our operations and execution of our business strategy as well as the overall success of our business. Our key human capital objectives in managing our business include attracting, developing and retaining top talent, while integrating diversity, equity and inclusion principles and practices into our core values. As such, we invest significant management attention, time and resources to attract, engage, develop and retain our talent. Our talent strategy focuses on our employee training and development, diversity and inclusion and the overall well-being and safety of our talent.

We have ongoing training and development programs to enable employees to further refine and develop their skills. We provide access and make training and development programs available to our employees which include technical programs, regulatory and compliance, business communications and leadership development.

We seek to attract a diverse population of employees by using a wide variety of recruiting platforms, such as online job portals, (including portals targeted to diverse communities), recruiters, in-person job fairs, local university training and recruitment programs, and employee referrals. We encourage training and development of our employees and provide on-the-job training and online platforms. We platforms and mandate training for all our employees on topics of diversity, equity and inclusion and intend to continually reinforce our commitment to global diversity, equity and inclusion.

Our success depends, in part, on our continuing ability to identify, hire, attract, train, develop, and maintain our employees' employees' well-being. Our ability to hire, attract and retain employees depends on our ability to provide competitive total compensation. Our compensation and benefit packages are designed to attract and retain employees and align the employees' employees' interests with our long-term success. We seek to align the interests of our employees and stockholders by providing long-term incentive programs such as awards of stock-based compensation to most of our employees. We generally make available the following benefits for our employees, including, but not limited to, a 401(k) retirement savings plan for our United States based employees, health insurance, flexible spending accounts, life insurance, long- and short-term disability, paid vacation, paid time off for holidays, sick time, and parental leave.

We are committed to ensuring providing a safe working environment for our employees. Our engineering and manufacturing facilities have injury prevention programs, and our procedures emphasize the need for the cause of injuries to be investigated and for action plans to be implemented to mitigate potential recurrence.

#### **Key Wireless Infrastructure Provider Relationships**

We have relationships with various wireless infrastructure providers. A summary of certain commercial relationships with wireless infrastructure providers is below.

We and Vodafone have agreed to enter into one or more definitive agreements for a commercial partnership that is anticipated to use the SpaceMobile Service (the "Vodafone Commercial Agreements"). In connection with the commercial agreements, we have agreed that we, our subsidiaries, and affiliates would not enter into any agreement, term sheet, or letter of intent that grants another party the rights related to the provision of mobile services in the Vodafone markets or Vodafone partner markets prior to the execution of the Vodafone Commercial Agreements.

The Vodafone Commercial Agreements are expected to include mutual exclusivity, conditioned upon Vodafone making the SpaceMobile Service available to all of its customers and certain promotional efforts, within all specified Vodafone markets for five years commencing on the launch of a commercial service in all of the specified Vodafone markets; preferential commercial terms in Vodafone partner markets; 50/50 revenue share for the SpaceMobile Service in Vodafone exclusivity markets; and the procurement, building and operating of mobile network ground stations at a mutually agreed cost by Vodafone. No payments have been made to date between us and Vodafone pursuant to the anticipated Vodafone Commercial Agreements. Vodafone has the right to designate one individual to our Board of Directors. Currently, Vodafone's designee is Luke Ibbetson, Head of Group Research & Development, Vodafone.

9

---

**Also, we** **We** entered into a side letter with Vodafone dated December 15, 2020, under which we have agreed (i) not to enter into any material corporate strategic relationship or material commercial agreement with a party other than Vodafone and its affiliates that would be reasonably expected to materially frustrate our ability to satisfy our obligations under the Vodafone Commercial Agreements with certain exceptions; (ii) to allocate sufficient funds in the capital budget to facilitate compliance with our obligations under the Vodafone Commercial Agreements; and (iii) not to alter our business plan in a manner that is materially detrimental to our ability to satisfy our obligations under the Vodafone Commercial Agreements.

**American Tower** The letter agreement entered into on January 16, 2024 between Vodafone and us provides, among other things, for an initial revenue commitment of \$25.0 million to us to be paid by Vodafone over a two and a half year period to be defined in a future definitive agreement for us to provide connectivity services. Also, Vodafone submitted a purchase order for network equipment from us to support planned commercial service.

**American Tower**

We and American Tower have entered into a side letter agreement that was subsequently amended and restated on December 15, 2020 to reflect the transactions and agreements contemplated by the Equity Purchase Agreement between us and New Providence Acquisition Corp. ("NPA") (the "Amended and Restated Letter Agreement"). The Amended and Restated Letter Agreement contemplates that we and American Tower will enter into commercial agreements to allow us to use American Tower facilities for our terrestrial gateway facilities in certain markets. The term of the operational agreement between us and American Tower is for an anticipated five years after the initial launch of commercial mobile services by us.

On March 22, 2022, we and American Tower entered into a non-binding term sheet reflecting the terms and conditions for the deployment of our gateway satellite technology equipment on property owned and operated by American Tower. Under the agreement, American Tower will provide us leased space and managed services at its current and future tower sites and data centers under the global master lease agreements to be entered into by the parties.

The usage of any American Tower services in a Vodafone market will be memorialized in a commercial agreement among all three parties. In markets where Vodafone does not operate ("Carrier Neutral Markets"), we and American Tower may enter into an agreement for American Tower to manage the operation of our deployed gateway facility in such market. In Carrier Neutral Markets where we require a third party to provide a gateway facility or services, we agree to not accept any bid that is inferior to American Tower's best and final proposal for such gateway facility or services. We also agree to use commercially reasonable efforts to utilize American Tower facilities in (i) Vodafone markets where Vodafone decides to not use its facilities, (ii) in Carrier Neutral Markets, and (iii) instances where we require a third-party vendor. Additionally, we will work with American Tower to evaluate and plan gateway facility and radio access network data center deployments with preferred vendor status to offer carrier-neutral hosting facilities in certain equatorial markets. American Tower will serve as the preferred vendor for carrier neutral hosting facilities. We will pay American Tower a monthly connection fee for use of a carrier neutral hosting facility, which we expect will be charged back to each applicable MNO. If we and American Tower agree to construct a new carrier neutral hosting facility or improve an existing one and American Tower elects to fund all such capital expenditures, American Tower will provide AST with a fair-market, long-term lease to such facility. No payments have been made to date between us and American Tower under the Amended and Restated Letter Agreement. American Tower has the

11

---

right to designate one individual to our Board of Directors. Currently, American Tower's designee is Ed Knapp, Chief Technology Officer, American Tower.

*On March 22, 2022, we and American Tower entered into a non-binding term sheet reflecting the terms and conditions for the deployment of our gateway satellite technology equipment on property owned and operated by American Tower. Under the agreement, American Tower will provide us leased space and managed services at its current and future tower sites and data centers under the global master lease agreements to be entered into by the parties.*

Rakuten

On February 4, 2020, we entered into a commercial agreement with Rakuten, for our the development of exclusive network capabilities in Japan compatible with the mobile network of Rakuten and its affiliates, which agreement was amended and restated as of December 15, 2020 (the "Rakuten Agreement"). Under the terms of the Rakuten Agreement, we agreed to make investments in building network capabilities in Japan that are compatible with the mobile network of Rakuten and its affiliates. Furthermore, we will collaborate with Rakuten to ensure network capability with Rakuten's licensed frequencies, including full coverage in Japan with 3GPP Band 3 frequencies with MIMO capability. Upon the launch of such coverage, Rakuten will receive unlimited, exclusive rights and usage capacity in Japan in exchange for a \$0.5 million annual maintenance fee payable to us or our successors. We Furthermore, we will make \$5.0 million (or such lesser amount as mutually agreed upon the parties) in capital investments towards the design, construction, assembly,

acquisition and implementation of ground communication assets. We and Rakuten will receive unlimited rights and usage of the ground assets for their respective operations, including, but not limited to, satellite and other telecommunication communications. The term of the Rakuten Agreement shall remain in effect until we fulfil our obligations under the Rakuten Agreement. Rakuten has the right to designate two individuals to our Board of Directors. Currently, Rakuten's designees are Mickey Rakuten has designated Hiroshi Mikitani, Founder, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, Rakuten, Inc., as a director and Tareq Amin, Chief Executive Officer, Rakuten Mobile. has the right to designate another individual.

*The Rakuten Agreement includes key performance indicators ("KPIs") associated with the number of satellites launched, timing and coverage of our SpaceMobile Service in Japan in a phased manner that we must meet. If we do not meet the applicable KPIs for the last two phases noted in the Rakuten Agreement by June 2023 or if AST LLC becomes subject to any bankruptcy*AT&T

10

---

proceeding or becomes insolvent, We and AT&T entered into a letter agreement on January 16, 2024, pursuant to which AT&T will make a non-refundable \$20.0 million commercial payment for prepaid service revenue, creditable against future service revenue of AST LLC, due after the launch and successful initial operation of the first five commercial satellites. AT&T also submitted a purchase order under a separate agreement for purchase of network equipment from AST LLC to support planned commercial service.

Under the letter agreement, we are required to pay use reasonable best efforts to Rakuten an amount of \$10.0 million. Payment of cause our Stockholders' Agreement, dated April 6, 2021 to be amended such amount can be made by issuing a promissory note bearing interest at 8.0% per annum that AT&T Services shall have the right to nominate, and payable in 12 quarterly installments over a three-year term, which can be prepaid at our election. We do not expect the parties to meet the applicable KPIs by June 2023. We and Rakuten are in discussions in light of our current business plan, planned deployment timeline, and commercialization strategy. However, there can be no assurance that Rakuten will such Stockholders' Agreement agree to amend vote for and cause the appointment of, a representative of AT&T Services that it determines in its sole discretion to (i) serve as a non-voting observer to our board of directors or waive (ii) serve as a director to our board of directors, subject to the \$10.0 million payment that would be due director nominee satisfying any established standards for not meeting the KPIs. If Rakuten does not agree to amend or waive this \$10.0 million payment, we expect to incur a liability of \$10.0 million in June 2023. The term of the Rakuten Agreement shall remain in effect until we fulfill our obligations under the Rakuten Agreement. No payments have been made to date between us direct qualification and Rakuten under the Rakuten Agreement. selection, including compliance with applicable laws.

#### Information about our Executive Officers

Certain information concerning our executive officers is set forth below:

Name	Position
Abel Avellan	Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer
Sean Wallace	Executive Vice President, Chief Financial Officer

Brian Heller

Executive Vice President, General Counsel and

Secretary

Shanti Gupta

Senior Vice President, Chief Accounting Officer

**Abel Avellan.** Mr. Avellan, age 52, is AST's Founder, Chairman, and Chief Executive Officer since its inception in 2017. Prior to founding AST, Mr. Avellan served as the founder and Chief Executive Officer of Emerging Markets Communications ("EMC"), a satellite-based communications services provider to maritime and other mobility markets, from 2000 until its sale for \$550.0 million in July 2016. Following the acquisition of EMC, Mr. Avellan worked as the President and Chief Strategy Officer for Global Eagle Entertainment Inc. until April 2017. Mr. Avellan has over 25 years of success in the space industry and is the co-inventor of 21 U.S. patents. He was the recipient of the Satellite Transaction of the Year award by Euroconsult in 2015 and was named Satellite Teleport Executive of the Year in 2017. Mr. Avellan has a Bachelor's in Electrical Engineering from Simón Bolívar University. Google

Sean Wallace. Mr. Wallace, age 61, serves as AST's Executive Vice President, Chief Financial Officer since May 2022. Mr. Wallace is an experienced business leader AST LLC has entered into a letter agreement on January 16, 2024 with over 35 years of finance, banking Google, LLC ("Google") whereby the parties will negotiate and management experience. Prior execute a definitive agreement to this appointment, Mr. Wallace served since May 2020 as the Chief Financial Officer provide, among other things, certain services to each other and Treasurer of Cogent Communications, Inc., a publicly traded company that is one of the world's largest commercial internet service providers. Prior have agreed to joining Cogent, Mr. Wallace was an investor collaborate on product development, testing and operator of industrial real estate projects from 2015 to 2020. He has also held senior management and banking positions at Standard Chartered, where he was the Global Head of their origination and coverage business, and at JP Morgan, where he was their Co-Head of Investment Banking, Asia Pacific and the leader of their North American Telecom Banking operations. Mr. Wallace's experience as a banker has provided him with expertise in a broad set of financing products, including debt, equity and project finance, executed primarily implementation plans for telecommunications companies. Mr. Wallace received an AB from Harvard College and an MBA from Harvard Business School. SpaceMobile network connectivity on Android devices.

Brian Heller. Mr. Heller, age 55, serves as AST's Executive Vice President, General Counsel and Secretary since February 2021. Mr. Heller has over twenty years of public company experience. Prior to joining AST, he served as General Counsel of Castle Brands Inc., a publicly-traded spirits company, from October 2008 until its sale to Pernod Ricard in October 2019, and as Senior Vice President - Business and Legal Affairs of Ladenburg Thalmann Financial Services, a publicly-traded financial services company, from April 2007 until its sale to a portfolio company of Reverence Capital Partners in May 2020. He joined Ladenburg from AOL Latin America, where he served as Associate General Counsel. Previously, Mr. Heller was a Partner in the Corporate and Intellectual Property Departments at the Steel Hector & Davis law firm (now Squire Patton Boggs) in Miami, Florida. Earlier in his career, he served as a law clerk to the Honorable James Lawrence King of the United States District Court for the Southern District of Florida. Mr. Heller received his J.D., cum laude, from Georgetown University Law Center, where he was Articles Editor of the Georgetown Law Journal, and his Bachelor of Science degree from Northwestern University. He is

admitted to practice law in New York and Florida. 12

---

**Shanti Gupta.** Mr. Gupta, age 46, serves as AST's Senior Vice President, Chief Accounting Officer since September 2021 and is responsible for the Company's financial operations, corporate accounting, external reporting, and financial planning and analytics. He brings more than 20 years of global finance and accounting experience to his role on AST's leadership team. Before joining AST, he worked with Ernst & Young LLP in New York from 2014, where he was a Partner and Managing Director in the Financial Accounting Advisory Services. Previously, he has worked with Deloitte & Touche LLP in New York and KPMG in India. He earned his Bachelor of Commerce (Honors) from Shri Ram College of Commerce, Delhi University, India, and is a licensed Certified Public Accountant. He is also a Chartered Accountant from The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.

11

---

### Available Information

Our Company's internet website address is [www.ast-science.com](http://www.ast-science.com). We file or furnish periodic reports and amendments thereto, including our Annual Reports on Form 10-K, our Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q and Current Reports on Form 8-K, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. We also make available on that website, and in print, if any stockholder or other person so requests, our "Code of Business Conduct and Ethics" applicable to all employees and Directors. Any changes to our Code of Ethics will be posted on that website. In addition, the SEC maintains a website ([www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov)) that contains reports, proxy and information statements, and other information regarding issuers that file electronically.

13

---

### Item 1A. Risk Factors

*You should carefully consider the risks described below together with the other information set forth in this report, which could materially affect our business, financial condition and future results. The risks described below are not the only ones that we may face. Additional risks that are not currently known to us or that we currently consider immaterial may also impair our business, financial condition or results of operations.*

### Risks Related to Our Business and Industry

**Our SpaceMobile Service is in development and may not be completed on time or at all and the costs associated with it may be greater than expected.**

Costs of the design, assembly, integration, testing and launch of satellites and related components and ground infrastructure, as well as operating costs, are substantial. There can be no assurance that we will complete the SpaceMobile Service and related infrastructure, products and services on a timely basis, on budget or at all. Design, assembly and launch of satellite systems are highly complex and historically have been subject to frequent delays and cost over-runs. For example, the BW3 launch was delayed, the BW3 development costs exceeded initial estimates and BW3 testing is taking took longer than expected; launch of Block 1 BB satellites was delayed. Development of the SpaceMobile Service, which is utilizing new technology, may continue to suffer from delays, interruptions or increased costs due to many factors, some of which may be beyond our control, including:

- the failure of the SpaceMobile Service to work as expected as a result of technological or manufacturing and assembly difficulties, design issues or other unforeseen matters;
- lower than anticipated demand and acceptance for the SpaceMobile Service and mobile satellite services in general;
- the inability to obtain capital in the public and private markets to finance the SpaceMobile Service and related infrastructure, products and services on acceptable terms or at all;
- engineering and/or manufacturing performance failing or falling below expected levels of output or efficiency;
- denial or delays in receipt of regulatory approvals or non-compliance with conditions imposed by regulatory authorities;
- the breakdown or failure of equipment or systems;
- the inability to reach commercially viable agreements with launch providers that can accommodate the technical specifications of our satellites, proposed orbits and resulting satellite coverage, and proposed launch timing;
- launch costs which may exceed our estimates;
- non-performance by third-party contractors or suppliers;
- the inability to develop or license necessary technology on commercially reasonable terms or at all;
- launch delays or failures or deployment failures or in-orbit satellite failures once launched;
- the inability to reach commercially viable cooperative agreements to license spectrum with one or more MNOs;
- the inability to negotiate agreements with mobile network operators relating to the SpaceMobile Service that would supersede memoranda of understanding;
- labor disputes or disruptions in labor productivity or the unavailability of skilled labor;
- increases in the costs of materials or services, including due to inflation;
- changes in project scope;

12

- 
- increased competition including competitors who may have more resources than we do;
  - additional requirements imposed by changes in laws or regulations;
  - geopolitical events, such as the outbreak of war or hostilities, as well as related sanctions and other trade restrictions;
  - the COVID-19 pandemic and pandemics, epidemics or other global public health events; or

- severe weather or catastrophic events such as fires, earthquakes, storms (including space storms and adverse weather in space) or explosions.

If any of the above events occur, they could have a material adverse effect on our ability to continue to develop the SpaceMobile Service and related infrastructure, products and services, which would materially adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***We will need to raise additional funds for continued operations and to initiate our planned SpaceMobile Service. These funds may not be available to us when we need them on favorable terms or at all. If we cannot raise additional funds when needed, our operations and prospects will be negatively affected.***

We currently estimate we will need to raise additional capital of approximately \$550.0 million to \$350.0 million to \$650.0 million for operating and capital expenditures to design, assemble and launch 20 Block 2 BB satellites and operate a constellation of 25 BB satellites to continue to provide SpaceMobile service. We intend to seek to raise additional capital prior to the commencement of the commercial services through the issuance of equity, equity related equity-linked or debt securities (secured or unsecured), secured loan or unsecured loans or other debt facilities, or through obtaining and credit from government or financial institutions or commercial partners. To partners, including through our existing Equity Line of Credit and the ATM Equity Program (as defined in "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations-Liquidity and Capital Resources"). We also intend to seek to raise funds draw the remaining available credit under the Senior Secured Credit Facility (as defined in "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations-Liquidity and Capital Resources"). Our ability to access the capital markets during this period of volatility may require us to modify our ability to do so will depend upon market conditions, and volatility in the capital markets. We cannot current expectations. There can be certain no assurance that additional funds will be available to us on the timelines we may need, on favorable terms if required, or at all. If we cannot raise additional funds when needed in the future, our financial condition, results of operations, business and prospects could may be materially and adversely affected.

***We will incur significant expenses and capital expenditures in the future to execute our business plan and develop the SpaceMobile Service, and we may be unable to adequately forecast or control our expenses.***

We will incur significant expenses and capital expenditures in the future to further our business plan and develop the SpaceMobile Service, including expenses to:

- design, develop, assemble and launch our satellites;
- design and develop the components of the SpaceMobile Service;

- conduct research and development;
- purchase raw materials and components;
- launch and test our systems;
- expand our design, development, maintenance and repair capabilities;
- costs associated with protecting our intellectual property rights; and
- increase our general and administrative functions to support our growing operations.

Because we will incur much of the costs and expenses from these efforts before we receive any revenues with respect thereto, our losses in future periods will be significant. Also, we may find that these efforts are more expensive than we currently anticipate or that these efforts may not result in revenues, which would further increase our losses. Our ability to become profitable in the future will not only depend on our ability to successfully launch satellites and build the SpaceMobile Service, but also to control costs. If we are unable to efficiently design, assemble, launch and service our satellites or experience significant delays during such development, our potential margins, potential profitability and prospects would be materially and adversely affected.

***We are an early stage company with a history of losses and may never become profitable.***

We incurred a net loss attributable to common stockholders of **\$34.8 million** **\$87.6 million** for the year ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023** and have incurred net losses **attributable to common stockholders** of approximately **\$105.3 million** **\$189.7 million** from our inception through **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**. To date, we have not generated any **revenue** **revenues** from our SpaceMobile Service. **Our** All past revenues were generated from sales and services by our former subsidiary, NanoAvionika UAB (“Nano”), generated revenue from the development and manufacture of satellite technology, and ancillary sales and services globally. Following the completion

13

---

of the sale of Nano on September 6, 2022, we **no longer** **did not** generate **revenue** and **do not expect to generate revenue** **in future periods until we launch the SpaceMobile Service.** **any revenue.**

15

---

We will continue to incur operating and net losses each quarter until at least the time we begin generating revenue as a result of planned launches of our commercial satellites **which is not currently expected to begin until 2024 at the earliest**, and may continue to incur operating or net losses even after we begin generating revenue. The likelihood of success of our business plan must be considered in light of the substantial challenges, expenses, difficulties, complications and delays frequently encountered in connection with developing and expanding early-stage businesses and the competitive

environment in which we operate. The development of a satellite-based direct wireless broadband Cellular Broadband network and related intellectual property is a speculative undertaking, involves a substantial degree of risk, is a capital-intensive business and may ultimately fail. If we cannot successfully execute our plan to develop a direct wireless broadband Cellular Broadband network from LEO satellites, referred to as SpaceMobile Service, our business will not succeed.

Our potential profitability is dependent upon the successful development and successful commercial introduction and acceptance of SpaceMobile Service, which may not occur. Even if we are able to successfully develop our SpaceMobile Service, there can be no assurance that it will be commercially successful and become profitable on a sustained basis, if at all. We expect to have quarter-to-quarter fluctuations in revenues, expenses and capital expenditures, some of which could be significant, due to research, development, manufacturing and assembly expenses and the investments required to design, assemble and launch the SpaceMobile Service constellation satellites.

***We will rely on MNOs and require regulatory approvals to access the spectrum the SpaceMobile Service needs to operate.***

Unlike traditional mobile satellite services, the SpaceMobile Service will is not being designed to deliver service over spectrum allocated for mobile satellite use. Rather, the SpaceMobile Service is being designed to deliver service over spectrum allocated for terrestrial mobile use. To do so, regulators in each country where we will offer the SpaceMobile Service will need to approve the SpaceMobile Service's use of spectrum in this manner. We cannot be sure that these regulatory approvals will be forthcoming or, if received, that they will be issued in a timely manner and on terms and conditions that will allow us to meet our business plan. We will also need to reach cooperative commercial agreements with MNOs under which they will agree to provide us with access to their licensed spectrum on suitable terms and conditions. We cannot be sure that such agreements can be reached or that the terms of such agreements will allow us to provide the SpaceMobile Service for a sufficient period of time or on terms and conditions that will allow us to meet our business plan.

***We have a limited operating history and operate in a rapidly evolving industry, which makes it difficult to evaluate our business and future prospects and increases the risk of your investment.***

Formed in May 2017, we have a limited operating history in the satellite communications industry, which is rapidly evolving. As a result, there is limited information on which investors can base an evaluation of our business, strategy, operating plan, results and prospects. We intend to derive substantially all of our revenues from the SpaceMobile Service, which is still in the beginning stages of development. There are also no assurances that we will be able to secure future business with, or to convert existing memoranda of understanding into definitive commercial agreements with, MNOs, who are in turn expected to market and sell the SpaceMobile Service to their existing customers as the end-user.

It is difficult to predict future revenues and appropriately budget for expenses, and we have limited insight into trends that may emerge and affect our business. We are a pre-revenue company facing substantial business and operational risks, including a relatively untested market strategy, all of which makes forecasting future business results particularly difficult and results in a significant level of execution risk.

***Our ability to successfully implement our business plan will depend on a number of factors outside of our control.***

The success of our business plan is dependent on a number of factors outside of our control, including:

- the ability to maintain the functionality, capacity and control of the SpaceMobile Service and satellite network once launched;
- the ability to access MNO or other spectrum on suitable terms to us;
- the level of market acceptance and demand for our products and services from MNOs and their end-user customers;
- the ability to introduce products and services that satisfy market demand;
- the ability to comply with all applicable regulatory requirements in the countries in which we plan to operate;

14

---

- the effectiveness of competitors in developing and offering similar services and products;
- consumer acceptance of initial phases of the SpaceMobile Service which is not expected to provide continuous service.

16

---

- the ability to find third parties to successfully launch our satellites; and
- the ability to maintain competitive prices for our products and services and to control our expenses.

Also, if the experience of the SpaceMobile Service's end-users is not reasonably equivalent to the experience they have using a terrestrial network, we may not achieve widespread consumer acceptance.

***We are highly dependent on the services of Abel Avellan, our founder, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, and if we are unable to retain Mr. Avellan, attract and retain key employees and hire qualified management, technical and engineering personnel, our ability to compete could be harmed.***

Our success depends, in part, on our ability to retain our key personnel. We are highly dependent on the services of Abel Avellan, our founder, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer. Mr. Avellan is the source of many of the unique technology and development of our business. If Mr. Avellan were to discontinue his employment with the Company due to death, disability or any other reason, we would be significantly disadvantaged. The unexpected loss of or failure to retain one or more of our key employees could adversely affect our business.

Our success also depends, in part, on our continuing ability to identify, hire, attract, train and develop other highly qualified personnel, in particular engineers. Experienced and highly skilled employees are in high demand, competition for these employees can be intense and there may be concerns regarding new employees' unauthorized disclosure of competitors' trade secrets, and our ability to hire, attract and retain them depends on our ability to provide competitive compensation. Because our satellites are based on a different technology platform than traditional LEO satellites, individuals with sufficient training in our technology may not be available to hire, and as a result, we will need to expend significant time and expense training the employees it does hire. We may not be able to attract, assimilate, develop or retain qualified personnel in the future, and our failure to do so could adversely affect our business, including the execution of our business strategy. Any failure by our management team and our employees to perform as expected may have a material adverse effect on our business, prospects, financial condition and operating results.

***Rapid and significant technological changes could render the SpaceMobile Service obsolete and impair our ability to compete.***

The satellite communications industry is subject to rapid advances and innovations in technology. We may face competition in the future from companies using new technologies and new satellite systems, including competitors who may have more resources than we do. New technology could render the planned SpaceMobile Service obsolete or less competitive by satisfying customer demand in more attractive ways or through the introduction of incompatible standards. Particular technological developments that could adversely affect the business plan may include the deployment by our competitors of new satellites with greater power, flexibility, efficiency or capabilities than ours, as well as continuing improvements in terrestrial wireless technologies. For us to keep pace with technological changes and remain competitive, we may need to make significant capital expenditures, including capital to design and launch new products and services. Customer acceptance of the products and services that we offer may be affected continually by technology-based differences in product and service offerings compared to those of competitors. New technologies may also be protected by patents or other intellectual property laws and therefore may not be available. Any failure to implement new technology within our SpaceMobile Service may compromise our ability to compete.

***If we fail to manage our future growth effectively, our business, prospects, operating results and financial condition may be materially adversely affected.***

We intend to expand our operations significantly as we develop the SpaceMobile Service and commence commercial operations. To properly manage our growth, we will need to hire and retain additional personnel, **upgrade our existing operational management and financial and reporting systems**, and improve our business processes and controls. Our future expansion will include:

- hiring and training new personnel;
- assembling, operating, and servicing the satellite network;
- developing new technologies;
- controlling expenses and investments in anticipation of expanded operations;

15

- 
- **upgrading the existing operational management and financial reporting systems to comply with requirements as a public company; and**
  - implementing and enhancing administrative infrastructure, systems and processes.

Failure to manage growth effectively could have a material adverse effect on the quality of the execution of our business plan, our ability to attract and retain professionals, as well as our business, financial condition and results of operations.

17

Also, as we introduce new services or enter into new markets, we may face new market, technological, operational, compliance and administrative risks and challenges, including risks and challenges unfamiliar to us. We may not be able to mitigate these risks and challenges to achieve our anticipated growth or successfully execute large and complex projects, which could materially adversely affect our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

***We could fail to achieve revenue, or experience a decline in revenue, as a result of increasing competition from companies in the wireless communications industry, including wireless and other satellite operators, and from the extension of land-based communications services or new technologies.***

We may face increased competition from new competitors, new technologies or new equipment, including new LEO constellations and expansion of existing geostationary satellite systems, new technology that could eliminate the need for a satellite system or redeployment of existing technologies to serve the direct to cellular handset market. Satellite service providers or others that rely on satellites for their business purposes and end markets, including us, face a currently challenging industry as evidenced by the past bankruptcies of OneWeb and Intelsat. The provision of satellite-based services and products is subject to downward price pressure when capacity exceeds demand. In addition to satellite-based competitors, terrestrial voice and data service providers, both wireline and wireless, could further expand into rural and remote areas and provide the same general types of services and products that we intend to provide. Although satellite communications services and terrestrial communications services are not perfect substitutes, the two compete in some markets and for some services and this competition may increase if the SpaceMobile Service proves successful. Consumers generally perceive terrestrial wireless voice communication products and services as less expensive and more convenient than those that are satellite-based. As a result of competition, we may not be able to successfully launch our SpaceMobile Service or products, retain our customers and attract new customers.

***We face competition from existing and potential competitors in the telecommunications industry, including terrestrial and satellite-based network systems.***

The mobile satellite services industry at-large is highly competitive, and we currently face substantial general competition from other service providers that offer a range of mobile and fixed communications options. There are also a number of competitors working to develop innovative solutions to compete in this industry. Also, while we view our services as largely complementary to terrestrial wireline and wireless communications networks through our MNO partnerships, we also compete with them indirectly.

We face competition from other existing service providers that offer a range of mobile and fixed communications options, such as Inmarsat, Globalstar, ORBCOMM, Thuraya Telecommunications Co. and Iridium Communications.

Also, Communications that offer a range of mobile and fixed communications options. In the case of fixed broadband operators, a VSAT end-user terminal is used to provide service while with mobile satellite service providers a special purpose satellite phone is required. In addition, we face competition from companies developing new LEO networks such as SpaceX's Starlink, OneWeb and Amazon's Kuiper and Globalstar. A continuing trend toward consolidation and strategic alliances in the telecommunications industry, as well as the potential development of new satellite constellations, could give rise to significant new competitors. For example, in Kuiper. In 2023, Apple introduced a new service supported by Globalstar which provides SOS Emergency Service capabilities to its latest generation iPhones. In September 2022,

SpaceX and T-Mobile US announced that they plan to offer a text based service from a constellation that will be built in the future.

We also will compete with regional mobile satellite communications services in several geographic markets. In these cases, the majority of our competitors' customers require regional, not global, mobile voice and data services so competitors may present a viable alternative to the SpaceMobile Service. These regional competitors operate or plan to operate geostationary satellites. In some markets, we compete directly or indirectly with very small aperture terminal operators that offer communications services through private networks using very small aperture terminals or hybrid systems to target business users. We also compete indirectly with terrestrial wireline and wireless communications networks and to the extent that terrestrial communications companies invest in underdeveloped areas, we may face increased competition in those areas. Furthermore, some foreign competitors may benefit from government subsidies, or other protective measures, afforded by their home countries.

Some of these competitors, as well as other existing companies that may seek to enter the markets we serve, may be larger amounts of capital and other resources, have access to financing and capital resources on more advantageous terms, and may provide more efficient products or services than we will be able to provide, any of which could reduce our market share and adversely affect our revenues and business.

16

---

18

---

***We will be dependent on third parties to market and sell our products and services.***

We expect to rely on MNOs to market and sell our products and services to end users and to determine the prices end users pay. As a result of these arrangements, we will be dependent on the performance of our commercial partners to generate most of our revenue. Such commercial partners will operate independently of us, which exposes us to significant risks. Commercial partners may not commit the necessary resources to market and sell our products and services and may also market and sell competitive products and services. Also, such commercial partners may not comply with the laws and regulatory requirements in their local jurisdictions, which could limit their ability to market or sell our products and services.

We are currently party to a number of preliminary agreements and understandings with MNOs. However, before we can offer the service, we will need to negotiate definitive commercial agreements with MNOs, which would supersede these preliminary agreements and understandings. There can be no assurance that we will be able to negotiate such definitive commercial agreements on terms acceptable to us. Also, many of these preliminary agreements and understandings will need to be renewed as their terms will end before we launch the SpaceMobile Service. If current or future commercial partners do not perform adequately or agree to commercially reasonable terms acceptable to us, we may be unable to

achieve our targeted revenue in these markets or enter new markets, and we may not realize our expected growth, and our brand image and reputation could be damaged.

***We rely on third parties for the supply of equipment, satellite components and services.***

Our business depends in large part on our ability to execute our plans to assemble, integrate and test our satellites and components. We rely on multiple suppliers to supply and produce certain highly-technical components. Any failure of these suppliers or others to perform could require us to seek alternative suppliers or to expand our production capabilities, which could incur additional costs and have a negative impact on our cost or supply of components. Also, production or logistics in supply or production areas or transit to final destinations can be disrupted for a variety of reasons including, but not limited to, natural and man-made disasters, information technology system failures, transportation difficulties, commercial disputes, military actions, economic, business, labor, environmental, public health or political issues or international trade disputes. If any of our suppliers terminate their relationships with us, fail to provide equipment or services on a timely basis, or fail to meet performance expectations, we may be unable to **launch satellites in a timely manner** or provide products or services to customers in a competitive manner, which could in turn negatively affect our financial results and reputation.

Our continued development of our SpaceMobile Service is and will be subject to risks, including with respect to:

- securing necessary components on acceptable terms and in a timely manner;
- delays in delivery of final component designs to our suppliers;
- our ability to attract, recruit, hire and train skilled employees;
- quality controls;
- legal or regulatory limitations placed on our launch providers as a result of geopolitical actions or otherwise;
- satellite launch or deployment failures;
- negotiation of agreements with launch providers;
- delays or disruptions in supply chain; and
- other delays and cost overruns.

We do not know whether we will be able to develop efficient, automated, low-cost production capabilities and processes and reliable sources of component supply that will enable us to successfully operate our SpaceMobile Service. Any failure to develop such production processes and capabilities within our projected costs and timelines could have a material adverse effect on our business, prospects, financial condition and operating results.

***We and our suppliers rely on complex systems and components, which involves a significant degree of risk and uncertainty in terms of operational performance and costs.***

We and our suppliers rely on complex systems and components for the operation and assembly of our satellites, which involves a significant degree of uncertainty and risk in terms of operational performance and costs. These components may suffer unexpected malfunctions from time to time and may require repairs and spare parts to resume operations, which may not be readily available

Operational performance and costs can be difficult to predict and are often influenced by factors outside of our control, such as, but not limited to, scarcity of natural resources, environmental hazards and remediation, difficulty or delays in obtaining governmental permit, damages or defects in various components, industrial accidents, fire, seismic activity and natural disasters. Should operational risks materialize, it may result in the monetary losses, delays, unanticipated fluctuations in production, environmental damage, administrative fines, increased insurance costs and potential legal liabilities, all which could have a material adverse effect on our business, prospects, financial condition or operating results.

***We face substantial risks associated with our international operations.***

We plan to offer our SpaceMobile Service in international markets and intend to collaborate with a number of foreign MNOs. Also, we have development offices or teams in India, Scotland, Spain and Israel. We also source supplies from international suppliers. Operating in foreign countries poses substantial risks, including:

- difficulties in developing products and services that are tailored to the needs of local customers;
- unavailability of, or difficulties in establishing, relationships with local MNOs;
- instability of international economies and governments, including geo-political conflicts; such as the recent conflict in Ukraine and resulting economic sanctions; geopolitical conflicts, acts of hostility or war;
- changes in laws and policies affecting trade and investment in other jurisdictions,
- exposure to varying legal standards, including data privacy, security and intellectual property protection in other jurisdictions;
- difficulties in obtaining required regulatory authorizations;
- difficulties in enforcing legal rights in other jurisdictions;
- local domestic ownership requirements;
- requirements that certain operational activities be performed in-country;
- changing and conflicting national and local regulatory requirements;
- foreign currency exchange rates and exchange controls; and
- ongoing compliance with the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, U.S. export controls, anti-money laundering and trade sanction laws, and similar anti-corruption and international trade laws in other countries.

***MNOs will expose us to currency exchange risk, and we cannot predict the effect of future exchange rate fluctuations on our business and operating results.***

Following the launch of the SpaceMobile Service in international markets, our international operations will be sensitive to currency exchange risks. We anticipate having currency exposure arising from both sales and purchases denominated in foreign currencies, as well as intercompany transactions. Significant changes in exchange rates between foreign

currencies in which we anticipate transacting business and the U.S. dollar may adversely affect our results of operations and financial condition.

***We may be negatively affected by global economic conditions.***

Our operations and performance depend significantly on worldwide economic conditions. Uncertainty about global economic conditions poses a risk as individual consumers, businesses and governments may postpone spending in response to tighter credit, negative financial news, declines in income or asset values, or budgetary constraints. Reduced demand could cause a significant delay in the launch of our satellites or the development of the SpaceMobile Service which in turn could cause a decline in our anticipated future revenue and make it more difficult to operate profitably in the future, potentially compromising our ability to pursue our business plan. We expect our future growth rate will be affected by the condition of the global economy, increased competition, maturation of the satellite communications industry, and the difficulty in sustaining high growth rates as we increase in size.

20

---

***Pursuing strategic transactions may cause us to incur additional risks.***

18

---

We may pursue acquisitions, joint ventures or other strategic transactions from time to time. We may face costs and risks arising from any such transactions, including integrating a new business into our business or managing a joint venture. These risks may include adverse legal, organizational and financial consequences, loss of key customers and distributors, and diversion of management's time.

Also, any major business combination or similar strategic transaction may require significant additional financing. Further, depending on market conditions, investor perceptions of us and other factors, we might not be able to obtain financing on acceptable terms, in acceptable amounts, or at appropriate times to implement any such transaction.

***The ongoing COVID-19 pandemic may disrupt Covenants and events of default in our operations. debt instruments could limit our ability to undertake certain types of transactions and adversely affect our liquidity. Additionally, our failure to comply with the covenants in our debt instruments could materially adversely affect our financial condition and liquidity. Further, we have pledged substantially all our assets under these instruments.***

***The COVID-19 pandemic has negatively impacted Our Atlas Credit Agreement, Term Loan Credit Agreement, and Lone Star Loan Agreement contain, and any future indebtedness of ours would likely contain, a number of restrictive covenants***

that impose significant operating and financial restrictions on us and may limit our ability to engage in acts that may be in our long-term best interest, including restrictions on our ability to, among other things:

- incur additional indebtedness and guarantee indebtedness;
- pay dividends or make other distributions or repurchase or redeem capital stock;
- prepay, redeem or repurchase certain debt;
- issue certain preferred stock or similar equity securities;
- make loans and investments;
- sell assets;
- incur liens;
- enter into transactions with affiliates;
- materially alter the global economy, disrupted global supply chains, including businesses we conduct;
- enter into agreements restricting our subsidiaries' ability to pay dividends; and
- consolidate, merge or sell all or substantially all of our assets.

Additionally, certain of these agreements require us, among other things, to maintain certain levels of liquidity, retain Abel Avellan as our chairman and Chief Executive Officer, maintain insurance policies on collateralized assets and collateralize all new intellectual property owned or acquired.

Our ability to meet these conditions can be affected by events beyond our control, and we may be unable to meet them.

A breach of the supply chain for computer chips, covenants or restrictions under the Atlas Credit Agreement, Term Loan Credit Agreement, Lone Star Loan Agreement, and created significant volatility Notes (as defined in "Management's Discussion and Disruption Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations-Overview") could result in an event of default under the applicable agreement. Such a default may allow the creditors to accelerate the related debt and may result in the financial and capital markets. We are acceleration of any other debt to which a cross-acceleration or cross-default provision applies. Furthermore, if we were unable to accurately predict repay the full impact amounts due and payable, the lenders could proceed against the collateral granted to them to secure that indebtedness which constitutes substantially all our assets. In the ongoing COVID-19 pandemic will event our lenders or noteholders accelerate the repayment of our borrowings, we and our subsidiaries may not have on sufficient assets to repay that indebtedness. As a result of these restrictions, we may be:

- limited in how we conduct our planned development business;
- unable to raise additional debt or equity financing to operate during general economic or business downturns; or
- unable to compete effectively or to take advantage of new business opportunities.

These restrictions may affect our ability to grow in accordance with our strategy. In addition, our financial results, our substantial indebtedness and our credit ratings could adversely affect the SpaceMobile Service, availability and terms of our financing and our financial condition and operational activities due liquidity could be materially adversely affected.

***Servicing our debt requires cash that would otherwise be used to numerous factors that are fund our business plan, and we may not within have sufficient cash flow from our control, including the duration business to pay our debt.***

Our ability to make scheduled payments of interest on or refinance our debt obligations depends on our financial condition and severity of the outbreak, stay-at-home orders, business closures, governmental efforts to distribute vaccines and overall vaccination rates, travel restrictions, supply chain disruptions and employee illness or quarantines, which could result in disruptions to operating performance.

If our operations and adversely impact our operations and financial condition. Also, the COVID-19 pandemic has resulted in ongoing volatility in the financial cash flows and capital markets. If resources are insufficient to fund our access to capital is restricted or associated borrowing costs increase as a result of developments in financial markets relating to the COVID-19 pandemic, our operations debt service obligations, we could face substantial liquidity problems and financial condition could be adversely impacted. Any future delays as a result forced to reduce or delay investments and capital expenditures or to dispose of COVID-19 would delay material assets or operations, seek additional debt or equity capital or restructure or refinance our phased development indebtedness. We may not be able to effect any such alternative measures, if necessary, on commercially reasonable terms or at all and, even if successful, those alternative actions may not allow us to meet our scheduled debt service obligations. Our debt instruments restrict our ability to dispose of assets and use the proceeds from those dispositions and may also restrict our ability to raise debt or equity capital to be used to repay other indebtedness when it becomes due. We may not be able to consummate those dispositions or to obtain proceeds in an amount sufficient to meet any debt service obligations then due.

If we cannot make scheduled payments on our debt, we will be in default and the lenders could declare all outstanding principal and interest to be due and payable and could foreclose against the assets securing their borrowings and we could be forced into bankruptcy or liquidation.

#### **Risks Related to Our Satellites and Planned SpaceMobile Service**

***We may not be able to launch our satellites successfully. Loss of a satellite during launch could delay or impair our ability to offer our services or reduce our expected potential revenues, and launch insurance, even if it is available, will not fully cover this risk.***

We rely on third parties to launch our satellites. If we fail to find third parties to launch our satellites or if the third parties fail to perform or delay their performance, the SpaceMobile Service may not be made operational in the anticipated timeframe or at all. There are a limited number of third parties with the capabilities to launch our satellites, some of which are exploring services that could compete with the SpaceMobile Service.

Also, we may not be able to operate our satellites successfully due to mechanical deployment failures after launch or problems occurring during the deployment once in space. In addition, we may not achieve the desired altitudes to operate our satellites which could result in a failure of our satellites to operate as planned.

We expect to insure the launch, over time, of all or a portion of our satellites to operate the SpaceMobile Service as intended, but do not intend to insure our satellites once they are launched for their remaining in-orbit operational lives.

Launch insurance currently costs approximately 3.0% to 15.0% of the insured value of the satellite (including launch costs) but will vary depending on market conditions and the safety record of the launch vehicle. We may choose not to insure every launch or to only partially insure some or all launches. Even if a lost satellite is fully insured, acquiring a replacement satellite may be difficult and time consuming. Furthermore, the insurance does not cover lost revenue.

We expect any launch failure insurance policies that we obtain to include specified exclusions, deductibles and material change limitations. Typically, these insurance policies exclude coverage for damage arising from acts of war, lasers, and other similar potential risks for which exclusions are customary in the industry at the time the policy is written.

If launch insurance rates were to rise substantially, all of the launch costs would increase. Also, in light of increasing costs, the scope of insurance exclusions and limitations on the nature of the losses for which we can obtain insurance, or other business reasons, we may conclude that it does not make business sense to obtain third-party insurance and may decide to pursue other strategies for mitigating the risk of a satellite launch failure, such as obtaining relaunch guarantees from the launch provider. It is also possible that insurance could become unavailable, either generally or for a specific launch vehicle, or that new insurance could be subject to broader exclusions on coverage, in which event we would bear the risk of launch failures.

22

---

19

---

***Our satellites may experience operational problems, which could affect our ability to provide an acceptable level of service to the end-user customers.***

Once the SpaceMobile Service is developed and operational, we may experience intermittent signal disruptions, dropped connections, call initiation failures or data transmission disruptions. If the magnitude or frequency of such problems occur repeatedly, we may no longer be able to provide a commercially acceptable level of service, our business and financial results and reputation would be harmed and our ability to pursue our business plan would be compromised. Also, failure to provide an acceptable level of service could cause MNOs to seek other solutions for their customers.

From time to time, we may reposition our satellites within the constellation to optimize service, which could result in degraded service during the repositioning period. Although we will have some ability to remedy some types of problems affecting the performance of satellites remotely from the ground, the physical repair of our satellites in space is not feasible.

***Our products could fail to perform or could perform at reduced levels of service because of technological malfunctions or deficiencies, regulatory compliance issues, or events outside of our control, which would harm our business and reputation.***

Our products and services are subject to the risks inherent in a global, complex telecommunications system employing advanced technology and heavily regulated by, among others, the FCC and similar authorities internationally. Any

disruption to our satellites, services, information systems or telecommunications infrastructure, or regulatory compliance issues, could result in the inability or reduced ability of end-user customers to receive services for an indeterminate period of time. These customers may include government agencies conducting mission-critical work throughout the world, as well as consumers and businesses located in remote areas of the world and operating under harsh environmental conditions where traditional telecommunications services may not be readily available. Any disruption to the SpaceMobile Service or extended periods of reduced levels of service could cause us to lose customers or revenue, result in delays or cancellations of future implementations of our products and services, result in failure to attract customers, or result in litigation, customer service or repair work that would involve substantial costs and distract management from operating our business. The failure of any of the diverse elements of the planned SpaceMobile Service, including our satellites, to function as required could render the SpaceMobile Service unable to perform at the quality and capacity levels required for success. Any system failures, repeated product failures or shortened product life, or extended reduced levels of service could reduce our expected sales, increase costs, or result in warranty or liability claims or litigation, and harm our business.

***Our satellites have a limited life and may fail prematurely, which would cause our network to be compromised and materially and adversely affect our business, prospects and potential profitability.***

We may experience in-orbit malfunctions of our satellites once launched, which could adversely affect the reliability of their service or result in total failure of the satellite. In-orbit failure of a satellite may result from various causes, including component failure, loss of power or fuel, inability to control positioning of the satellite, solar or other astronomical events, including solar radiation, wind and flares, and space debris. Other factors that could affect the useful lives of our satellites include the quality of construction, gradual degradation of solar panels and the durability of components. Radiation-induced failure of satellite components may result in damage to, or loss of, a satellite before the end of its expected life. Although we would not incur any direct cash costs related to the failure of a satellite, if a satellite fails, we would expect to record an impairment charge in our statement of operations to reduce the remaining net book value of that satellite to zero, and any such impairment charges could depress our net income for the period in which the failure occurs.

***Our business may be adversely affected if we are unable to protect our intellectual property rights from unauthorized use by third parties.***

Failure to adequately protect our intellectual property rights could result in our competitors offering similar services and products, potentially resulting in the loss of some of our competitive advantage and a decrease in our revenue, which would adversely affect our business, prospects, financial condition and operating results. Our success depends, at least in part, on our ability to protect our core technology and intellectual property and to keep our use of exclusive licenses. To accomplish this, we will rely on a combination of patents, trade secrets (including know-how), employee and third-party nondisclosure agreements, copyrights, trademarks, intellectual property licenses and other contractual rights to establish and protect our rights in our technology.

The protection of our intellectual property rights will be important to our future business opportunities. However, the measures we take to protect our intellectual property from unauthorized use by others may not be effective for various reasons, including the following:

- any patent applications we submit may not result in the issuance of patents;

2023

- the scope of our issued patents, including our patent claims, may not be broad enough to protect our proprietary rights;
- our issued patents may be challenged or invalidated by our competitors;
- our employees or business partners may breach their confidentiality, non-disclosure and non-use obligations to us;
- third parties may independently develop technologies that are the same or similar to ours;
- the costs associated with enforcing patents, confidentiality and invention agreements or other intellectual property rights may make enforcement impracticable; and
- current and future competitors may circumvent our intellectual property.

Patent, trademark, copyright and trade secret laws vary throughout the world. Some foreign countries do not protect intellectual property rights to the same extent as do the laws of the U.S. Further, policing the unauthorized use of our intellectual property in foreign jurisdictions may be difficult. Therefore, our intellectual property rights may not be as strong or as easily enforced outside of the U.S. Also, we may have difficulty enforcing our rights against a competitor where an infringement occurs in outer space.

***Our intellectual property applications for registration may not issue or be registered, which may have a material adverse effect on our ability to prevent others from commercially exploiting products similar to ours.***

We cannot be certain that we are the first inventor of the subject matter to which we have filed a particular patent application, or if we are the first party to file such a patent application. If another party has filed a patent application to the same subject matter as we have, we may not be entitled to the protection sought by the patent application. We also cannot be certain whether the claims included in a patent application will ultimately be allowed in the applicable issued patent. Further, the scope of protection of issued patent claims is often difficult to determine. As a result, we cannot be certain that the patent applications that we file will issue, or that our issued patents will afford protection against competitors with similar technology. Also, our competitors may design around our issued patents, which may adversely affect our business, prospects, financial condition and operating results.

***We may in the future become subject to claims that our satellites or services violate the patent or intellectual property rights of others, which could be costly and disruptive to us.***

We operate in an industry that is susceptible to significant intellectual property litigation. Although we maintain intellectual property litigation insurance (currently \$7.0 million for defending infringement claims and \$10.0 million to bring offensive infringement claims), the defense of intellectual property suit is both costly and time-consuming, even if ultimately successful, and may divert management's attention from other business concerns. An adverse determination in litigation to which we may become a party could, among other things:

- subject us to significant liabilities to third parties, including lost profit and treble damages that are not covered by insurance;
- require disputed rights to be licensed from a third party for royalties that may be substantial;

- require us to cease using technology that is important to our business; or
- prohibit us from using some or all of our devices or offering some or all of our services.

***Our customized hardware and software may be difficult and expensive to service, upgrade or replace.***

Some of the hardware and software we use in operating our SpaceMobile Service is significantly customized and tailored to meet our requirements and specifications and could be difficult and expensive to service, upgrade or replace. Although we expect to maintain inventories of some spare parts, it nonetheless may be difficult, expensive or impossible to obtain replacement parts for the hardware due to a limited number of those parts being manufactured to our requirements and specifications. Also, our business plan contemplates updating or replacing some of the hardware and software in our network as technology advances, but the complexity of our requirements and specifications may present us with technical and operational challenges that complicate or otherwise make it expensive or infeasible to carry out such upgrades and replacements. If we are not able to suitably service, upgrade or replace our equipment, our ability to provide our services and therefore to generate revenue could be harmed.

24

---

***Our networks and those of our third-party service providers and MNOs may be vulnerable to security risks.***

We expect the secure transmission of confidential information over public networks to continue to be a critical element of our ability to compete for business, manage our risks, and protect our customers and our reputation. Our network and those of our third-party service providers and our customers may be vulnerable to unauthorized access, computer attacks, viruses and other

21

---

security problems. Persons who circumvent security measures could wrongfully access and obtain or use information on our network or cause service interruptions, delays or malfunctions in our devices, services or operations, any of which could harm our reputation, cause demand for our products and services to fall, and compromise our ability to pursue our business plan. Recently, there have been reported a number of significant, widespread security attacks and breaches that have compromised network integrity for many companies and governmental agencies, in some cases reportedly originating from outside the United States. Also, there are reportedly private products available in the market today which may attempt to unlawfully intercept communications made using our network. We may be required to expend significant resources to respond to, contain, remediate, and protect against these attacks and threats, including compliance with applicable data breach and security laws and regulations, and to alleviate problems, including reputational harm and litigation, caused by these security incidents. In the event of such a security incident, our customer contracts may not adequately protect us against liability to third parties with whom our customers conduct business. Although we have implemented and intend to continue to implement security measures, these measures may prove to be inadequate. These security incidents could have a significant effect on our systems, devices and services, including system failures and

delays that could limit network availability, which could harm our business and our reputation and result in substantial liability.

***Cyberattacks impacting our networks or systems may have a material effect on our operations.***

Cyberattacks, including through the use of malware, computer viruses, distributed denial of services attacks, ransomware attacks, credential harvesting, social engineering and other means for obtaining unauthorized access to or disrupting the operation of our networks and systems could have a material adverse effect on our operations. Cyberattacks can cause equipment or network failures, loss of information, including sensitive personal information of employees or proprietary information, as well as disruption to our operations, which could result in significant expenses, potential investigations and legal liability, and reputational damage. The development and maintenance of systems to prevent such attacks is costly and requires ongoing monitoring and updating. While, to date, we have not been subject to cyberattacks that, individually or in aggregate, have been material to our operations or financial condition, the preventive actions we take to reduce the risks associated with cyberattacks may be insufficient to repel or mitigate the effects of a major cyberattack in the future.

***Our satellites may collide with space debris or another spacecraft, which could adversely affect the performance of our SpaceMobile Service.***

Although we expect to comply with best practices and international orbital debris mitigation requirements to actively maneuver our satellites to avoid potential collisions with space debris or other spacecraft, including an onboard propulsion system and altitude and orbit control system, these abilities are limited by, among other factors, uncertainties and inaccuracies in the projected orbit location of, and predicted collisions with, debris objects tracked and cataloged by governments or other entities. Additionally, some space debris is too small to be tracked and therefore its orbital location is unknown; nevertheless, this debris is still large enough to potentially cause severe damage or a failure of our satellites should a collision occur. If our satellites collide with space debris or other spacecraft, our SpaceMobile Service could be impaired. Also, a failure of one or more of our satellites or the occurrence of equipment failures, collision damage, or other related problems that may result during the de-orbiting process could constitute an uninsured loss and could materially harm our financial condition.

**Risks Related to Our Legal and Regulatory Matters**

***Our business is subject to extensive government regulation worldwide, which mandates how we may operate our business and may increase the cost of providing services and expansion into new markets.***

Our ownership and operation of a satellite communications system and the sale of services from such system are subject to significant regulation in the United States, including by the FCC, the U.S. Department of Commerce and others, and in foreign jurisdictions by similar local authorities. The rules and regulations of these U.S. and foreign authorities may change, and such authorities may adopt regulations that limit or restrict our operations as presently conducted or currently

contemplated. Such authorities may also make changes to the licenses of our partners or competitors that affect their spectrum, and may, in turn, significantly affect our business. Further, because regulations in each country are different, we may not be aware if some of our partners or persons with whom we do business do not hold the requisite licenses and approvals. Our failure to provide services in accordance with the terms of our licenses or our failure to operate our satellites or ground stations as required by our licenses and applicable laws and government regulations could result in the imposition of government sanctions and/or monetary fines, including the suspension or cancellation of our licenses.

***Our ability to provide service to our customers and generate revenues could be harmed by adverse governmental regulatory actions.***

Our business is subject to extensive government regulation. Our ability to secure all requisite governmental approvals is not assured, and the process of obtaining governmental authorizations and permits can be very time-consuming and time-sensitive, and require compliance with a wide array of administrative and procedural rules. Our pending application seeking FCC approval to operate feeder links at fixed locations on V-band frequencies in the U.S. has been opposed by multiple competitors in the satellite mobile and terrestrial wireless businesses and we have no assurance if, and when, the requested authority will be forthcoming or what terms and conditions the FCC might impose on a grant. Multiple parties also have objected to both the process by which we propose to request authority to use spectrum generally allocated for terrestrial broadband mobile services and to the substance of that forthcoming request. We have no assurance regarding the outcome of these objections. Also, we have not yet ~~filed a request with~~ obtained permission from the FCC for direct to handset market access. ~~operate service links directly to end user handsets and other devices.~~ A failure by us to obtain required approvals could compromise our ability to generate revenue or conduct our business in one or more countries. Our requests for regulatory approvals may be subject to challenges by adverse parties and these challenges may delay or prevent favorable action. Furthermore, regulatory approvals can be issued subject to conditions that have an adverse effect on our ability to implement our business plan.

The government approvals required for us to operate the SpaceMobile Service need to be periodically renewed and renewal is not guaranteed. The approvals also are subject to revocation, and we may be subject to fines, forfeitures, penalties or other sanctions if any issuing authority were to find that we are not in compliance with the applicable rules, regulations or policies. The regulatory obligations we must meet are complex, vary greatly from country to country, and are subject to interpretation. We cannot give any assurance that the governments will agree with or accept our compliance efforts.

The regulations we and our competitors must adhere to are subject to change by the issuing governmental authorities and there is no guarantee that changes will not be made that are adverse to our business. Regulatory changes, such as those resulting from judicial decisions or the adoption of treaties, legislation or regulations in countries where we operate or intend to operate may also significantly affect our business.

***Our ability to offer one or more services in important countries or regions of the world may be limited due to regulatory requirements or geopolitical events.***

Our ability to provide SpaceMobile Service may be limited in some jurisdictions by local regulations. For example, some countries have local domestic ownership requirements, or requirements for physical facilities or gateways within their

jurisdictions, that may be difficult for us to satisfy. In some countries, we may not be able to reach a commercially viable agreement with an MNO that will enable us to access the spectrum needed to deliver the SpaceMobile Service. Also, geopolitical events, such as the outbreak of war or hostilities, as well as related sanctions and other trade restrictions, could impair our ability to provide services in important areas. The inability to offer or provide the SpaceMobile Service in certain markets could impair us from achieving our revenue and growth plans.

26

---

***We expect to provide our SpaceMobile Service in the U.S. and elsewhere on frequencies not regularly allocated for mobile-satellite service, which requires regulatory approval, and there can be no assurance that we will receive or be able to maintain such approval.***

The SpaceMobile Service will utilize end-user frequencies that are not allocated to satellite services. Instead, the SpaceMobile Service will be delivered to end-user customers over frequencies generally allocated for terrestrial broadband mobile services. The SpaceMobile Service's use of spectrum generally allocated for terrestrial broadband mobile services, and our ability to access the U.S. market, will need approval by the FCC. If the FCC does not provide approval, our business will be significantly, adversely affected, and the provision of the SpaceMobile Service could be delayed or diminished, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. Because terrestrial mobile frequencies are licensed to carriers throughout the U.S., our use of such spectrum will be pursuant to a cooperative arrangement with one or more MNOs, such as spectrum leasing agreements. Our access to this spectrum will be subject to approval or notification by the regulatory licensing authority, and any such approval or notification may be delayed or rejected, which may substantially affect our business. Under such arrangements, we will not be the license holder for the spectrum, and our continued access to and use of the frequencies will be subject to the ongoing consent of the MNO, and to the terms and conditions of the cooperative agreement with such MNO. There can be no assurance that we can reach suitable cooperative agreements with MNOs or that such agreements will continue for the life of the SpaceMobile Service.

The shared use of the terrestrial broadband spectrum by us and the MNO will require the implementation of procedures and safeguards to avoid interference to other users. While we believe our SpaceMobile Service will be able to avoid such interference through our patented technology, because the SpaceMobile Service is a new and innovative service that has not yet been

23

---

implemented, the nature, extent and effectiveness of these interference avoidance techniques, and their effect on the service we will deliver, remains to be practically proven. If the SpaceMobile Service causes or receives harmful interference, it could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***The SpaceMobile Service may qualify as a commercial mobile radio service which will subject us to a variety of ongoing regulatory requirements.***

Government regulators have adopted a broad array of regulations governing the terms and conditions of wireless service designed to protect consumers and the public interest. While our arrangements with the MNOs will address some of these requirements, these regulatory obligations may prove burdensome and could have an adverse effect on our business. If we fail to comply in any material respect with any of these regulatory requirements, we could be subject to financial penalties or enforcement action, including the loss of authority to provide service.

### **Risks Related to Our Organizational Structure**

***We are a “controlled company” within the meaning of the Nasdaq listing standards and, as a result, qualify for, and rely on, exemptions from certain corporate governance requirements. You will not have the same protections afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to such requirements.***

As of **March 31, 2023** **March 28, 2024**, Mr. Avellan and his permitted transferees hold all of the Class C Common Stock, which prior to the Sunset Date will entitle such holders to cast the lesser of 10 votes per share and the Class C Share Voting Amount, the latter of which is a number of votes per share equal to (1) (x) an amount of votes equal to 88.3% of the total voting power of our outstanding voting stock, minus (y) the total voting power of our outstanding capital stock (other than Class C Common Stock) owned or controlled by Mr. Avellan and his permitted transferees, divided by (2) the number of shares of our Class C Common Stock then outstanding. As a result, as of **March 31, 2023** **March 28, 2024**, Mr. Avellan and his permitted transferees holdings, control approximately **86.5%** **81.5%** of the combined voting power of our Common Stock, and may control a majority of our voting power so long as the Class C Common Stock represents at least 9.1% of our total Common Stock. As a result of Mr. Avellan and his permitted transferees holdings, we qualify as a “controlled company” within the meaning of the Nasdaq corporate governance standards. Under these rules, a listed company of which more than 50% of the voting power is held by an individual, group or another company is a “controlled company” and may elect not to comply with certain corporate governance requirements, including the requirement that (i) a majority of our Board of Directors consist of independent directors, (ii) we have a compensation committee that is composed entirely of independent directors and (iii) director nominees be selected or recommended to the board by independent directors.

27

---

We rely on certain of these exemptions. As a result, we do not have a nominating and corporate governance committee consisting entirely of independent directors and our directors were not nominated or selected solely by independent directors. We may also rely on the other exemptions so long as we qualify as a controlled company. To the extent we rely on any of these exemptions, holders of our Class A Common Stock will not have the same protections afforded to stockholders of companies that are subject to all of the Nasdaq corporate governance requirements.

***The multi-class structure of our Common Stock has the effect of concentrating voting power with our Chief Executive Officer, which will limit an investor’s ability to influence the outcome of important transactions,***

***including a change of control.***

Holders of shares of our Class A Common Stock are entitled to cast one vote per share of Class A Common Stock, while holders of shares of our Class C Common Stock are (1) prior to the Sunset Date, entitled to cast the lesser of (x) 10 votes per share and (y) the Class C Share Voting Amount and (2) from and after the Sunset Date, entitled to cast one vote per share. As of **March 31, 2023** **March 28, 2024**, Mr. Avellan and his permitted transferees controlled approximately **86.5%** **81.5%** of the combined voting power of our Common Stock as a result of their ownership of all of our Class C Common Stock. Accordingly, while we do not intend to issue additional Class C Common Stock in the future, Mr. Avellan will be able to exercise control over all matters requiring our stockholders' approval, including the election of our directors, amendments of our organizational documents and any merger, consolidation, sale of all or substantially all of our assets or other major corporate transactions. Mr. Avellan may have interests that differ from yours and may vote in a way with which you disagree and which may be adverse to your interests. This concentrated control may have the effect of delaying, preventing or deterring a change in control of our company, could deprive our stockholders of an opportunity to receive a premium for their capital stock as part of a sale of our company, and might ultimately affect the market price of shares of our Class A Common Stock.

24

---

***We cannot predict the impact our multi-class structure may have on the stock price of our Class A Common Stock.***

We cannot predict whether our multi-class structure will result in a lower or more volatile market price of Class A Common Stock or in adverse publicity or other adverse consequences. For example, certain index providers have announced restrictions on including companies with multiple-class share structures in certain of their indices. In July 2017, FTSE Russell and S&P Dow Jones announced that they would cease to allow most newly public companies utilizing dual or multi-class capital structures to be included in their indices. Affected indices include **the Russell 2000 and the S&P 500, S&P MidCap 400 and S&P SmallCap 600**, which together make up the S&P Composite 1500. Beginning in 2017, MSCI, a leading stock index provider, opened public consultations on their treatment of no-vote and multi-class structures and temporarily barred new multi-class listings from certain of its indices; however, in October 2018, MSCI announced its decision to include equity securities "with unequal voting structures" in its indices and to launch a new index that specifically includes voting rights in its eligibility criteria. Under the announced policies, our multi-class capital structure would make us ineligible for inclusion in certain indices, and as a result, mutual funds, exchange-traded funds and other investment vehicles that attempt to passively track those indices will not be investing in our stock. These policies are still fairly new and it is as of yet unclear what effect, if any, they will have on the valuations of publicly traded companies excluded from the indices, but it is possible that they may depress these valuations compared to those of other similar companies that are included. Because of our multi-class structure, we will likely be excluded from certain of these indices and we cannot assure you that other stock indices will not take similar actions. Given the sustained flow of investment funds into passive strategies that seek to track certain indices, exclusion from stock indices would likely preclude investment by many of these funds and could make shares of our Class A Common Stock less attractive to other investors. As a result, the market price of shares of our Class A Common Stock could be adversely affected.

***We are a holding company and rely primarily on distributions from AST LLC to fund our operations.***

We are a holding company and our principal asset is our interest in AST LLC, and, accordingly all of our operations and activities relate to the operations and activities of AST LLC. We do not have independent means of generating revenue or cash flow, and our ability to pay our taxes, operating expenses, and pay any dividends in the future is dependent upon the financial results and cash flows of AST LLC. There can be no assurance that AST LLC will generate sufficient cash flow to distribute funds to us or that applicable state law and contractual restrictions, including negative covenants under debt instruments, will permit such distributions. If AST LLC does not distribute sufficient funds to us to pay our taxes or other liabilities, we may default on contractual obligations or need to borrow additional funds, which may not be available. In the event that we are required to, and able to, borrow additional funds it could adversely affect our liquidity and subject us to additional restrictions imposed by lenders.

28

---

***If we were deemed an “investment company” under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the “Investment Company Act”), applicable restrictions could make it impractical for us to continue our business as contemplated and could have a material adverse effect on our business.***

An issuer will generally be deemed to be an “investment company” for purposes of the Investment Company Act if:

- it is an “orthodox” investment company because it is or holds itself out as being engaged primarily, or proposes to engage primarily, in the business of investing, reinvesting or trading in securities; or
- it is an inadvertent investment company because, absent an applicable exemption, it owns or proposes to acquire investment securities having a value exceeding 40% of the value of its total assets (exclusive of U.S. government securities and cash items) on an unconsolidated basis.

We believe that we are engaged primarily in the business of developing and providing access to a space-based cellular broadband network to be accessible by standard smartphones and not primarily in the business of investing, reinvesting or trading in securities. We hold ourselves out as communications company and do not propose to engage primarily in the business of investing, reinvesting or trading in securities. Accordingly, we do not believe that we are an “orthodox” investment company as described in the first bullet point above. Furthermore, we treat AST as a majority-owned subsidiary for purposes of the Investment Company Act. Therefore, we believe that less than 40% of our total assets (exclusive of U.S. government securities and cash items) on an unconsolidated basis comprise assets that could be considered investment securities. Accordingly, we do not believe that we or AST will be an inadvertent investment company by virtue of the 40% inadvertent investment company test as described in the second bullet point above. Also, we believe we will not be an investment company under section 3(b)(1) of the Investment Company Act because we will be primarily engaged in a non-investment company business.

The Investment Company Act and the rules thereunder contain detailed parameters for the organization and operations of investment companies. Among other things, the Investment Company Act and the rules thereunder limit or prohibit transactions with affiliates, impose limitations on the issuance of debt and equity securities, prohibit the issuance of stock options, and impose certain governance requirements. We intend to continue to conduct our operations so that we will not be deemed to be an

25

---

investment company under the Investment Company Act. However, if anything were to happen that would cause us to be deemed to be an investment company under the Investment Company Act, requirements imposed by the Investment Company Act, including limitations on our capital structure, ability to transact business with affiliates (including AST) and ability to compensate key employees, could make it impractical for us to continue our business as currently conducted, impair the agreements and arrangements between and among AST, us or our senior management team, or any combination thereof and materially and adversely affect our business, financial condition and results of operations.

#### **Risks Related to Tax**

***Our principal asset is our interest in AST LLC, and accordingly we depend on distributions from AST LLC to make any payments required to be made by us under the Tax Receivable Agreement.***

AST LLC is treated as partnership for U.S. federal income tax purposes and, as such, generally is not subject to any entity-level U.S. federal income tax. Instead, taxable income is allocated, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, to the holders AST Common Units and Incentive Equity Units. Under the terms of the A&R Operating Agreement, AST LLC is obligated to make pro rata tax distributions to holders of AST Common Units and Incentive Equity Units calculated at certain assumed rates. In addition to tax expenses, we will also incur expenses related to our operations, including payment obligations under the Tax Receivable Agreement, which could be significant and some of which will be reimbursed by AST LLC (excluding payment obligations under the Tax Receivable Agreement). For so long as we are Managing Member (as defined in the A&R Operating Agreement) of AST LLC, we intend to cause AST LLC to make ordinary distributions and tax distributions to the holders of AST Common Units and Incentive Equity Units on a pro rata basis in amounts sufficient to enable us to cover all applicable taxes, relevant operating expenses, payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement and dividends, if any, declared by us. However, AST LLC's ability to make such distributions may be subject to various limitations and restrictions, including, but not limited to, retention of amounts necessary to satisfy the obligations of AST LLC and its subsidiaries and restrictions on distributions that would violate any applicable restrictions contained in AST LLC's debt agreements, or any applicable law, or that would have the effect of rendering AST LLC insolvent. To the extent we are unable to make payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement for any reason, such payments will be deferred and will accrue interest until paid. Additionally, nonpayment for a specified period and/or under certain circumstances may constitute a material breach of a material obligation under the Tax Receivable Agreement and therefore accelerate payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement, which could be material.

29

---

If the distributions received from AST LLC exceed our actual tax liabilities and obligations to make payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement, our Board of Directors, in its sole discretion, will make any determination from time to time with respect to the use of any such excess cash so accumulated, which may include, among other uses, to pay dividends on our Class A Common Stock. We will have no obligation to distribute such cash (or other available cash other than any declared dividend) to our stockholders.

***The Tax Receivable Agreement requires us to make cash payments to the TRA Holders in respect of certain tax benefits and such payments may be substantial. In certain cases, payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement may (i) exceed any actual tax benefits the Tax Group realizes or (ii) be accelerated.***

In connection with the Business Combination, we entered into the Tax Receivable Agreement. Pursuant to the Tax Receivable Agreement, we are generally required to pay the TRA Holders (as defined in the Tax Receivable Agreement) 85% of the amount of savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state, local, and foreign taxes that are based on, or measured with respect to, net income or profits, and any interest related thereto that we and any applicable consolidated, unitary, or combined Subsidiaries (the “Tax Group”) realize, or are deemed to realize, as a result of certain “Tax Attributes”, which include:

- existing tax basis in certain assets of AST LLC and certain of its direct or indirect Subsidiaries, including assets that eventually be subject to depreciation or amortization, once placed in service, attributable to AST Common Units acquired by us from a TRA Holder (including AST Common Units held by a Blocker Corporation (as defined in the Tax Receivable Agreement) acquired by us in a Reorganization Transaction (as defined in the Tax Receivable Agreement)), each determined at the time of the relevant acquisition;
- tax basis adjustments resulting from taxable exchanges of AST Common Units (including any such adjustments resulting from certain payments made by us under the Tax Receivable Agreement) acquired by us from a TRA Holder pursuant to the terms of the A&R Operating Agreement;
- tax deductions in respect of portions of certain payments made under the Tax Receivable Agreement; and
- certain tax attributes of Blocker Corporations holding AST Common Units that are acquired directly or indirectly by us pursuant to a Reorganization Transaction.

26

Payments under the TRA generally will be based on the tax reporting positions that we determine (with the amount of subject payments determined in consultation with an advisory firm and subject to the TRA Holder Representative's review and consent), and the IRS or another taxing authority may challenge all or any part of a position taken with respect to Tax Attributes or the utilization thereof, as well as other tax positions that we take, and a court may sustain such a challenge. In the event that any Tax Attributes initially claimed or utilized by the Tax Group are disallowed, the TRA Holders will not be required to reimburse us for any excess payments that may previously have been made pursuant to the Tax Receivable Agreement, for example, due to adjustments resulting from examinations by taxing authorities. Rather, any excess payments made to such TRA Holders will be applied against and reduce any future cash payments otherwise required to be made by us to the applicable TRA Holders under the Tax Receivable Agreement, after the determination of

such excess. However, a challenge to any Tax Attributes initially claimed or utilized by the Tax Group may not arise for a number of years following the initial time of such payment and, even if challenged earlier, such excess cash payment may be greater than the amount of future cash payments that we might otherwise be required to make under the terms of the Tax Receivable Agreement. As a result, there might not be future cash payments against which such excess can be applied and we could be required to make payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement in excess of the Tax Group's actual savings in respect of the Tax Attributes.

Moreover, the TRA provides that, in the event (such events collectively, "Early Termination Events") that (i) we exercise our early termination rights under the Tax Receivable Agreement, (ii) certain changes of control of the Company or AST occur (as described in the A&R Operating Agreement), (iii) we, in certain circumstances, fail to make a payment required to be made pursuant to the TRA by its final payment date, which non-payment continues for 60 days following such final payment date or (iv) we materially breach (or are deemed to materially breach) any of our material obligations under the TRA other than as described in the foregoing clause (iii) and, in the case of clauses (iii) and (iv), unless certain liquidity related or restrictive covenant related exceptions apply, our obligations under the TRA will accelerate (if the TRA Holder Representative so elects in the case of clauses (ii)-(iv)) and, we will be required to make a lump-sum cash payment to all the TRA Holders equal to the present value of all forecasted future payments that would have otherwise been made under the TRA, which lump-sum payment would be based on certain assumptions, including those relating to there being sufficient future taxable income of the Tax Group to fully utilize the Tax Attributes over certain specified time periods and that all AST Common Units (including AST Common Units held by Blocker Corporations) that had not yet been exchanged for Class A Common Stock or cash are deemed exchanged for cash. The lump-sum payment could be material and could materially exceed any actual tax benefits that the Tax Group realizes subsequent to such payment.

Payments under the TRA will be our obligations and not obligations of AST LLC. Any actual increase in our allocable share of AST and its relevant subsidiaries' tax basis in relevant assets, as well as the amount and timing of any payments under the TRA, will vary depending upon a number of factors, including the timing of exchanges, the market price of the Class A Common Stock at the time of an exchange of AST Common Units by a TRA Holder pursuant to the terms of the A&R Operating Agreement and the amount and timing of the recognition of the Tax Group's income for applicable tax purposes. While many of the factors that will determine the amount of payments that we will be required to make under the TRA are outside of our control, we expect that the aggregate payments we will be required to make under the TRA could be substantial and could have an adverse effect on our financial condition, which may be material.

Any payments made by us under the TRA will generally reduce the amount of overall cash flow that might have otherwise been available to us. To the extent that we are unable to make timely payments under the TRA for any reason, the unpaid amounts will be deferred and will accrue interest until paid. Additionally, nonpayment for a specified period and/or under certain circumstances may constitute a material breach of a material obligation under the TRA and therefore accelerate payments due under the TRA. Furthermore, our future obligation to make payments under the TRA could make us a less

attractive target for an acquisition, particularly in the case of an acquirer that cannot use some or all of the Tax Attributes that may be deemed realized under the TRA. Increases in income tax rates, changes in income tax laws or disagreements with tax authorities can adversely affect our, AST's or its subsidiaries' business, financial condition or results of operations.

***We could be adversely affected by changes in applicable tax laws, regulations, or administrative interpretations thereof in the United States or other jurisdictions.***

We could also be adversely affected by changes in applicable tax laws, regulations, or administrative interpretations thereof in the United States or other jurisdictions and changes in tax law, including increases in applicable tax rates and limitations on deductions and credits, could reduce our after-tax income and adversely affect our business and financial condition.

Our effective tax rate and tax liability are based on the application of current income tax laws, regulations and treaties. These laws, regulations and treaties are complex and often open to interpretation. In the future, the tax authorities could challenge our interpretation of laws, regulations and treaties, resulting in additional tax liability or adjustment to our income tax provision that could increase our effective tax rate. Changes to tax laws may also adversely affect our ability to attract and retain key personnel.

27

---

**Risks Related to Owning our Class A Common Stock**

***Failure to establish and maintain effective internal controls in accordance with Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act could have a material adverse effect on our business and stock price.***

We are required to comply with the SEC's rules implementing Sections 302 and 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, which require management to certify financial and other information in our quarterly and annual reports and provide an annual management report on the effectiveness of controls over financial reporting. Additionally, once we no longer qualify as a "smaller reporting company," we will be required to have our independent registered public accounting firm provide an attestation report on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. An adverse report may be issued in the event our independent registered public accounting firm is not satisfied with the level at which our controls are documented, designed or operating.

A material weakness is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal controls, such that there is a reasonable possibility that a material misstatement of the entity's financial statements will not be prevented, or detected and corrected on a timely basis. A significant deficiency is a deficiency, or combination of deficiencies, in internal controls that is less severe than a material weakness, yet important enough to merit attention by those charged with governance. When evaluating our internal control over financial reporting, we may identify material weaknesses that we may not be able to remediate in time to meet the applicable deadline imposed upon us for compliance with the requirements of Section 404.

On April 12, 2021, the Acting Chief Accountant and Acting Director of the Division of Corporation Finance of the SEC issued a Staff Statement on Accounting and Reporting Considerations for Warrants Issued by Special Purpose Acquisition Companies ("SPACs") (the "SEC Staff Statement"). Following this issuance of the SEC Staff Statement, after consultation with our independent registered public accounting firm, our management and our audit committee concluded that, in light of the SEC Staff Statement, it was appropriate to restate our previously issued audited financial statements as of and for the years ended December 31, 2020 and 2019 (the "Restatement"). See "—Our outstanding warrants are

accounted for as liabilities and the changes in value of our Warrants could have a material effect on our financial results." As part of such process, we identified a material weakness in our internal controls over financial reporting which was remediated.

***We are an emerging growth company and smaller reporting company, and any decision on our part to comply only with certain reduced reporting and disclosure requirements applicable to emerging growth companies and smaller reporting companies could make our Class A Common Stock less attractive to investors.***

We are an emerging growth company, and, for as long as we continue to be an emerging growth company, we may choose to take advantage of exemptions from various reporting requirements applicable to other public companies but not to "emerging growth companies," including:

- not being required to have our independent registered public accounting firm audit our internal control over financial reporting under Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act;

31

---

- reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in our periodic reports and proxy statements; and
- exemptions from the requirements of holding a nonbinding advisory vote on executive compensation or golden parachute payments not previously approved.

Our status as an emerging growth company will end as soon as any of the following takes place:

- the last day of the fiscal year in which we have more than \$1.07 billion in annual revenue;
- the date we qualify as a "large accelerated filer," with at least \$700.0 million of equity securities held by non-affiliates;
- the date on which we have issued, in any three-year period, more than \$1.0 billion in non-convertible debt securities; or
- December 31, 2024, the last day of the fiscal year ending after the fifth anniversary of NPA's initial public offering.

Further, the JOBS Act exempts emerging growth companies from being required to comply with new or revised financial accounting standards until private companies (that is, those that have not had a registration statement under the Securities Act declared effective or do not have a class of securities registered under the Exchange Act) are required to comply with the new or revised financial accounting standards. The JOBS Act provides that a company can elect to opt out of the extended transition period and comply with the requirements that apply to non-emerging growth companies but any such election to opt out is irrevocable. We have elected not to opt out of such extended transition period, which means that when a standard is issued or revised and it has different application dates for public or private companies, we, as an emerging growth company, can adopt the new or revised standard at the time private companies adopt the new or revised standard. This may make comparison of our

28

---

financial statements with another public company, which is neither an emerging growth company nor a company that has opted out of using the extended transition period, difficult because of the potential differences in accounting standards used.

We are also a smaller reporting company, as defined in the Exchange Act. Even after we no longer qualify as an emerging growth company, we may still qualify as a smaller reporting company, which would allow us to continue taking advantage of many of the same exemptions from disclosure requirements, including not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act and reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in this Annual Report on Form 10-K and our periodic reports and proxy statements.

We cannot predict if investors will find our securities less attractive if we choose to rely on any of the exemptions afforded to emerging growth companies or smaller reporting companies. If some investors find our securities stock less attractive because we rely on any of these exemptions, there may be a less active trading market for our securities and the market price of those securities may be more volatile.

***A significant portion of our total outstanding shares of our Class A Common Stock (or shares of our Class A Common Stock that may be issued in the future pursuant to the exchange or redemption of AST Common Units) are restricted from immediate resale but may be sold into the market in the near future. This could cause the market price of our Class A Common Stock to drop significantly, even if our business is doing well.***

Subject to certain exceptions, pursuant to certain Stockholders' Agreement, dated as of April 6, 2021, by and among the Company and the Stockholder Parties ("Stockholders' Agreement") the Stockholders' Agreement, the Sponsor and the AST Equityholders (together, the "Stockholder Parties") are contractually restricted from transferring any SpaceMobile common stock held by such party (other than approximately 2,500,000 shares of Class A Common Stock purchased by certain Existing Equityholders in the Private Investment in Public Equity Investment ("PIPE Investment")) for a period of one year following the Closing of our initial business combination, or April 6, 2022 (the "Lock-Up Period").

Following the expiration of the Lock-up Period, no Stockholder Party will be restricted from selling shares of our Class A Common Stock held by them or that may be received by them in exchange for AST Common Units or warrants, as the case may be, other than by applicable securities laws. As such, sales of a substantial number of shares of our Class A Common Stock in the public market could occur at any time. These sales, or the perception in the market that the holders of a large number of shares intend to sell shares, could reduce the market price of our Class A Common Stock. As of **March 28, 2023** **March 28, 2024**, the Stockholder Parties collectively owned approximately **69.5%** **53.7%** of our outstanding common stock, representing approximately **93.2%** **87.6%** of the voting power of our common stock, and the AST Equityholders, in turn, owned approximately **67.2%** **52.5%** of the AST Common Units. As restrictions on resale end, the sale or possibility of sale of these shares of Class A Common could have the effect of increasing the volatility in the market price of our Class A Common Stock, or decreasing the market price itself.

**We require substantial amounts of capital, and we expect such requirements will increase in the future. As a result, our stockholders may experience future dilution as a result of future equity offerings and such dilution may be substantial.**

In order to execute our business plans, we will need a substantial amount of capital in the near term and in the future to further our business plan and develop the SpaceMobile Service, including expenses to:

- design, develop, assemble, integrate, test and launch our Block 2 BB satellites;
- design and develop the components of the SpaceMobile Service;
- purchase direct materials and components;
- expand our AIT facilities and production capabilities; and
- support satellite and network operations.

We expect to raise additional funds through the issuance of equity, equity related or debt securities, secured loan facilities, or through obtaining credit from government or financial institutions or commercial partners, although our ability, if any, to access the capital markets during this period of volatility may require us to modify our current expectations. We are in discussions with various financing sources to enhance liquidity. We may in the future offer additional shares of our Class A Common Stock or other securities convertible into or exchangeable for our Class A Common Stock at a price per share that may be less than the price per share paid by any investors in previous offerings, and investors purchasing shares or other securities in the future could have rights superior to existing stockholders. Given the substantial capital needs of our business and business plans, any such dilution may be substantial.

**If we are unable to raise additional capital in the future, it may result in our independent auditors or management expressing substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern in future financial statements.**

There can be no assurance that we will be able to raise additional funds when needed or on favorable terms or at all. If we cannot raise additional funds when needed, our independent auditors or management may express substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern in future financial statements.

Because we will incur much of the costs and expenses from these efforts before we receive any revenues with respect thereto, our losses in future periods will be significant. Also, we have in the past and may in the future find that these efforts are more expensive than we currently anticipate, as our business plan is dependent upon our ability to successfully launch satellites and build the SpaceMobile Service, but also to control costs. The design, manufacture and launch of satellite systems are highly complex and historically have been subject to frequent delays and cost over-runs. The nature of our business thus requires us to regularly reevaluate our business plans and forecasts, and any prior projections should be disregarded unless otherwise indicated. Given the novelty of our business, there is no guarantee that our capital needs will not increase, and such increases may be substantial.

Any debt we incur may be either unsecured or secured. To the extent that we incur such debt in the future, such creditors would have the right to receive payment on account of such debt in a bankruptcy or liquidation prior to equityholders receiving any payments and if secured, would have a security interest in all or certain of our assets.

There can be no assurance that additional funds will be available to us on favorable terms or at all. If we cannot raise additional funds when needed, our financial condition, results of operations, business and prospects may be materially

and adversely affected.

Further, despite our recent financing transactions, our need for capital in the future may result in our independent auditors or management expressing substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern in future financial statements. If we were to receive a going concern qualification in our financial statements, the trading price of our Class A Common Stock could be significantly negatively impacted.

***Exercise of outstanding warrants to purchase our Class A Common Stock and any conversion of our Notes will result in dilution to our stockholders.***

As of **March 28, 2023** March 28, 2024, there are 17,597,600 outstanding warrants to purchase 17,597,600 shares of our Class A Common Stock at an exercise price of \$11.50 per share, which may be exercised at any time. Additionally, the holders of our Notes may at their option convert the Notes (subject to certain exceptions) at any time on or after January 16, 2025 or prior to January 16, 2025 in the event that we undergo a fundamental change at the initial conversion rate of 173.9130 shares of Class A Common Stock per \$1,000 principal amount of Notes (equivalent to an initial conversion price of \$5.75 per share of Class A Common Stock). As of March 28, 2024 such amount is the equivalent of 19,130,435 and represents the number of Class A Common Stock convertible

33

---

on the \$110.0 million currently outstanding. To the extent such warrants are exercised, and/or notes are converted, additional shares of our Class A Common Stock will be issued, which will result in dilution to the holders of our Class A Common Stock and increase the number of shares eligible for resale in the public market. Sales of substantial numbers of such shares in the public market or the fact that such warrants may be exercised dilution is possible could adversely affect the market price of our Class A Common Stock.

29

---

***As a holding company, we will depend on the ability of AST LLC to make distributions to us.***

We are a holding company and do not have any significant operations or assets other than our ownership of partnership interests in AST LLC. Distributions from AST LLC will be our primary source of funds to meet ongoing cash requirements, including future debt service payments, if any, and other expenses. The inability of AST LLC to make distributions in an amount sufficient to enable us to meet our cash requirements at the holding company level could have an adverse effect on our operations and our ability to pay dividends to our stockholders if our board of directors determined to do so in the future and/or meet our debt service obligations, if any.

***Provisions in our organizational documents and certain rules imposed by regulatory authorities may delay or prevent our acquisition by a third-party.***

Our Bylaws require, unless we consent in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, that (i) any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf, (ii) any action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty owed by any director, officer or other employee to us or our stockholders, (iii) any action asserting a claim against us, our directors, officers or employees arising pursuant to any provision of the DGCL or our Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation ("Charter") or Bylaws, or (iv) any action asserting a claim against us, our directors, officers or employees governed by the internal affairs doctrine may be brought only in the Court of Chancery in the State of Delaware, except any claim (a) as to which the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware determines that there is an indispensable party not subject to the jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery (and the indispensable party does not consent to the personal jurisdiction of the Court of Chancery within 10 days following such determination), (b) which is vested in the exclusive jurisdiction of a court or forum other than the Court of Chancery, (c) for which the Court of Chancery does not have subject matter jurisdiction, or (d) any action arising under the Securities Act, as to which the Court of Chancery and the federal district court for the District of Delaware shall have concurrent jurisdiction. If an action is brought outside of Delaware, the stockholder bringing the suit will be deemed to have consented to service of process on such stockholder's counsel. Although we believe this provision benefits us by providing increased consistency in the application of Delaware law in the types of lawsuits to which it applies, a court may determine that this provision is unenforceable, and to the extent it is enforceable, the provision may have the effect of discouraging lawsuits against our directors and officers, although our stockholders will not be deemed to have waived our compliance with federal securities laws and the rules and regulations thereunder.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, our Bylaws provide that the exclusive forum provision will not apply to suits brought to enforce a duty or liability created by the Exchange Act or any other claim for which the federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction. Section 27 of the Exchange Act creates exclusive federal jurisdiction over all suits brought to enforce any duty or liability created by the Exchange Act or the rules and regulations thereunder. Although we believe this provision benefits us by providing increased consistency in the application of Delaware law in the types of lawsuits to which it applies, the provision may have the effect of discouraging lawsuits against our directors and officers. For more information, see "Description of Capital Stock."

### **General Risk Factors**

#### ***The market price and trading volume of our securities may be volatile.***

Securities markets worldwide experience significant price and volume fluctuations. This market volatility, as well as general economic, market or political conditions, could reduce the market price of our Class A Common Stock in spite of our operating performance. We cannot assure you that the market price of our Class A Common Stock will not fluctuate widely or decline significantly in the future in response to a number of factors, including, among others, the following:

- the realization of any of the risk factors presented in this report;
- developments involving our competitors;
- variations in our operating performance and the performance of our competitors in general;
- difficult global market and economic conditions;
- loss of investor confidence in the global financial markets and investing in general;
- inability to attract, retain or motivate our directors, officers or other key personnel;

- 
- adverse market reaction to indebtedness we may incur, securities we may grant under our 2020 Plan or otherwise, or other securities we may issue in the future, including shares of Class A Common Stock;
  - failure to meet securities analysts' earnings estimates;

- 
- publication of negative or inaccurate research reports about us or our industry or the failure of securities analysts to provide adequate coverage of the Class A Common Stock in the future;
  - speculation in the press or investment community about our business;
  - additions and departures of key employees and personnel;
  - competition for talent and skill-sets required;
  - commencement of, or involvement in, litigation involving us;
  - the volume of shares of our Class A Common Stock available for public sale;
  - additional or unexpected changes or proposed changes in laws or regulations or differing interpretations thereof affecting our business or enforcement of these laws and regulations, or announcements relating to these matters;
  - increases in compliance or enforcement inquiries and investigations by regulatory authorities, including as a result of regulations mandated by the Dodd-Frank Act and other initiatives of various regulators that have jurisdiction over us; and
  - adverse publicity about our industry.

---

***Information available in public media that is published by third parties, including blogs, articles, message boards and social and other media may include statements not attributable to the Company and may not be reliable or accurate.***

We have received, and may continue to receive, a high degree of media coverage that is published or otherwise disseminated by third parties, including blogs, articles, message boards and social and other media. This includes coverage that is not attributable to statements made by our officers or associates. Information provided by third parties may not be reliable or accurate, may travel quickly through social media, and could materially impact the trading price of our Class A Common Stock.

**We may be subject to litigation, including securities class action litigation or other claims relating to our business operations, which may harm our reputation, business, financial condition and results of operations.**

Companies that have experienced volatility in the market price of their stock have been subject to securities class action litigation. We are already a party to securities class action litigation and may be the target of this type of litigation in the future. Securities litigation against us could result in substantial costs and damages, and divert management's attention from other business concerns, which could seriously harm our reputation, business, financial condition and results of operations.

We may also be called on to defend ourselves against lawsuits relating to our business operations. Some of these claims may seek significant damage amounts due to the nature of our business. Due to the inherent uncertainties of litigation, we cannot accurately predict the ultimate outcome of any such proceedings. A future on-payment outcome in a legal proceeding could have an adverse impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations. Also, current and future litigation, regardless of its merits, could result in substantial legal fees, settlement or judgment costs and a diversion of management's attention and resources that are needed to successfully run our business.

**Our outstanding warrants are accounted for as liabilities and the changes in value of our warrants could have a material effect on our financial results.**

On April 12, 2021, the Acting Chief Accountant and Acting Director of the Division of Corporation Finance of the SEC issued a Staff Statement on Accounting and Reporting Considerations for Warrants Issued by Special Purpose Acquisition Companies ("SPACs") (the "SEC Staff Statement"). The SEC Staff Statement sets forth the conclusion of the SEC's Office of the Chief Accountant that certain provisions included in the warrant agreements entered into by many special purpose acquisition companies require such warrants to be accounted for as liabilities measured at fair value, rather than as equity securities, with changes in fair value during each financial reporting period reported in earnings. As a result of the SEC Staff Statement, we reevaluated the accounting treatment of our warrants, and determined to classify the warrants as derivative liabilities measured at fair value, with changes in fair value each period reported in earnings.

As a result, included on our audited Consolidated Balance Sheets consolidated balance sheets as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 contained elsewhere in this report are derivative liabilities related to embedded features contained within our warrants. Accounting Standards Codification ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging* ("ASC 815"), provides for the remeasurement of the fair value of such derivatives at each balance sheet date, with a resulting non-cash gain or loss related to the change in the fair value being recognized in earnings in the statement of operations. As a result of the recurring fair value measurement, our audited consolidated financial statements and results of operations may fluctuate quarterly, based on factors which are outside of our control. Due to the recurring fair value measurement,

---

we expect that we will recognize non-cash gains or losses on our warrants each reporting period and that the amount of such gains or losses could be material.

**An active trading market for our securities may not be maintained.**

We can provide no assurance that we will be able to maintain an active trading market for our Class A Common Stock on Nasdaq or any other exchange in the future. If an active market for our securities is not maintained, or if we fail to satisfy the Nasdaq continued listing standards for any reason and our securities are delisted, it may be difficult for our security

holders to sell their securities without depressing the market price for the securities or at all. An inactive trading market may also impair our ability to both raise capital by selling shares of capital stock and acquire other complementary products, services, technologies or businesses by using our shares of capital stock as consideration.

***Securities analysts may not publish favorable research or reports about our business or may publish no information at all, which could cause our stock price or trading volume to decline.***

The trading market for our securities is influenced to some extent by the research and reports that industry or financial analysts publish about us and our business. We do not control these analysts, and the analysts who publish information about our company may have relatively little experience with us or our industry, which could affect their ability to accurately forecast our results and could make it more likely that we fail to meet their estimates. In the event we obtain securities or industry analyst coverage, if any of the analysts who cover us provide inaccurate or on-payment research or issue an adverse opinion regarding our stock price, our stock price could decline. If one or more of these analysts cease coverage of us or fail to publish reports covering us regularly, we could lose visibility in the market, which in turn could cause our stock price or trading volume to decline.

***Global macroeconomic conditions may negatively affect us and may magnify certain risks that affect our business.***

Our business is sensitive to general economic conditions, both inside and outside the U.S. Slower global economic growth, credit market crises, high levels of unemployment, reduced levels of capital expenditures, government deficit reduction, changes in inflation and interest rate environments, sequestration and other austerity measures and other challenges affecting the global economy adversely affects us and our distributors, customers, and suppliers. It is uncertain how long these effects will last or whether economic and financial trends will worsen or improve. Changes in economic conditions and supply chain constraints and steps taken by governments and central banks could lead to higher inflation than previously experienced or expected, which could, in turn, lead to an increase in costs. In an inflationary environment, we may experience increased operating costs. Such uncertain economic times may have a material adverse effect on our results of operations, financial condition and, if circumstances worsen, our ability to raise capital at reasonable rates. If slower growth in the global economy continues for a significant period, if there is significant deterioration in the global economy or if improvements in the global economy **don't do not** benefit the markets we serve, our business and financial condition could be adversely affected.

#### **Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments**

Not applicable.

## Item 1C. Cybersecurity

### *Cybersecurity risk management and strategy*

Our cybersecurity risk management strategy and processes, which are integrated into our overall risk management process, for assessing, identifying and managing material risks from cybersecurity threats are designed based on established frameworks and standards developed by the National Institute of Standards and Technology ("NIST"). Although this does not mean that we currently meet all technical standards, specifications, or requirements, we use this framework, complemented by insights from internal assessments, to guide the development of policies governing the use of our information assets, access to intellectual property, and the safeguarding of personal information.

We regularly assess the threat landscape and take a holistic view of cybersecurity risks, with a layered cybersecurity defense strategy based on prevention, detection and containment. We employ industry standard measures directly or indirectly related to cybersecurity, such as multifactor authentication, endpoint protection defenses, antivirus protection, encryption standards, restricting access based on business necessity, and remote access monitoring. Our employees undergo regular cybersecurity awareness training, receive guidance on protecting confidential information, and participate in simulated phishing exercises. The training provides employees with a baseline understanding of cybersecurity fundamentals to prevent security breaches and safely identify potential threats. We engage third parties to conduct penetration testing and evaluate our adherence to industry-standard frameworks. We assess the security framework employed by our third party service providers including their reports on security, availability and confidentiality to assess and identify material risks from cybersecurity threats associated with our use of third party applications. We have also established liaison programs with the Federal Bureau of Investigation ("FBI") and U.S. Cybersecurity & Infrastructure Security Agency ("CISA") to monitor, identify, and counter advanced persistent threats specific to our company and industry. As part of this program, we have an FBI Special Agent assigned as our Liaison Officer who provides us with periodic cybersecurity threat briefings, and also provides counter-threat support on request.

As of December 31, 2023, we have not identified any risks from cybersecurity threats (including any previous cybersecurity incidents) that have materially affected or are reasonably likely to materially affect our business strategy, financial condition or results of operations. For further details on cybersecurity risks, please refer to the Risk Factors discussion in Item 1A of this Report, including the discussion under the heading "Cyberattacks impacting our networks or systems may have a material effect on our operations."

### *Governance of cybersecurity risk management*

Our Board of Directors, acting through the Audit Committee, is responsible for overseeing management's implementation and execution of the risk management process, including our cybersecurity risk management strategy and processes. Our Audit Committee reviews and deliberates on our risk assessment and risk management practices, including cybersecurity risks, in collaboration with management.

Management bears the responsibility for the day-to-day assessment and management of cybersecurity risks. We have formed a Cyber Security Incident Response Team ("CSIRT") to manage and govern the response to any real or suspected cybersecurity incidents. The CSIRT core team, consisting of the information technology team, classifies detected cybersecurity incidents into one of three categories based on potential impact to the functionality of the affected systems, possible or known information involved and recoverability effort. The classification of cybersecurity incidents is designed to allow rapid prioritization, response and escalation. The CSIRT core team engages with third party experts and cross-functional CSIRT members, as required, to manage the cybersecurity incidents. Cybersecurity incidents that are potentially significant or could result in a material impact are reported to the CSIRT Executive team, consisting of designated executives of the Company. The CSIRT Executive team is responsible for the oversight of the cybersecurity incidents and related critical decisions, performing a materiality assessment, overseeing the public disclosure of material cybersecurity matters, engaging law enforcement agencies, including our local FBI Liaison Officer, correspondence with the media, and communicating with our Audit Committee and Board of Directors, as appropriate.

## Item 2. Properties

We currently operate from multiple locations, including our corporate headquarters and satellite assembly, integrating and testing facilities in Texas.

Property	Location	Leased / Owned
AIT Assembly, Integration and Testing Facility (100,000 square feet)	Midland, Texas	Owned
AIT Assembly, Integration and Testing Facility (85,000 square feet)	Midland, Texas	Leased
Engineering and Development Center	Lanham, Maryland	Leased
Corporate Office	Miami, Florida	Leased
Engineering and Development Center	Scotland Israel	Leased
AIT and Engineering and Development Center (10,500 square feet)	Spain	Leased
AIT Facility and Engineering and Development Center (33,000 square feet)	Israel United Kingdom	Leased
Research and Development Center	India	Leased

## Item 3. Legal Proceedings

From time We are subject to time, we may become involved in various legal proceedings or be subject to and claims arising that have arisen in the ordinary course of business and that have not been fully adjudicated. In the opinion of management, there was not at least a reasonable possibility we may have incurred a material loss, or a material loss in excess of any recorded accrual, with respect to loss contingencies. However, the outcome of litigation is inherently uncertain. Therefore, although management considers the likelihood of such an outcome to be remote, if one or more of these legal matters were resolved against us in a reporting period for amounts in excess of management's expectations,

our business. We are not currently party to any material legal proceedings. Regardless of outcome, such proceedings or claims can have an adverse impact on us because of defense and settlement costs, diversion of resources and other factors and there can consolidated financial statements for that reporting period could be no assurances that favorable outcomes will be obtained. materially adversely affected. Refer to Note 13:10: Commitments and Contingencies in the accompanying notes to the audited consolidated financial statements for further information.

38

---

#### *Delaware Class Action Litigations*

Following books and records demands pursuant to 8 Del. C. § 220, two stockholders have filed putative class action complaints in the Delaware Court of Chancery against the Company, certain current and former directors of the Company and its predecessor entity and manager, New Providence Acquisition Corp. and New Providence Management LLC, and Abel Avellan, alleging claims of breach of fiduciary duties and aiding and abetting such breaches, relating to the de-SPAC merger. The first of those complaints, Taylor v. Coleman, et al. (C.A. No. 2023-1292), was filed on December 27, 2023, and the second, Drulias v. New Providence Management LLC, et al., was filed on March 29, 2024 (collectively, the "Delaware Stockholder Class Actions"). Both complaints seek equitable relief and unspecified monetary damages. On March 15, 2024, prior to the filing of the Drulias action, Defendants had moved to dismiss the Taylor action. No schedule has been set for either of the Delaware Stockholder Class Actions.

#### **Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures**

Not Applicable.

33 39

---

## **PART II**

#### **Item 5. Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities**

##### ***Market Information***

Our Class A Common Stock and Public Warrants are listed on the Nasdaq Stock Market under the symbols "ASTS" and "ASTSW," respectively. Our Class B Common Stock and Class C Common Stock are neither listed nor traded.

### ***Holders***

As of **March 28, 2023** **March 28, 2024** we had approximately **21** **25** holders of record of our Class A Common Stock, **six** **four** holders of record of Class B Common Stock, one holder of Class C Common Stock and five holders of record of Private Placement and Public warrants, each exercisable for one share of Class A Common Stock at a price of \$11.50 per share.

### ***Dividend Policy***

We have not declared or paid any dividends on our common stock to date. We do not currently intend to pay any dividends in the foreseeable future. We expect to retain future earnings, if any, to fund the development and growth of our business. Any future determination relating to dividend policy will be made at the discretion of our board of directors and will depend on a number of factors, including our future earnings, capital requirements, financial condition, prospects and other factors that our board of directors may deem relevant.

### ***Recent Sales of Unregistered Equity Securities***

On May 6, 2022, we entered into the Common Stock Purchase Agreement (the "Common Stock Purchase Agreement") with B. Riley Principal Capital, LLC ("B. Riley"). Pursuant to the Common Stock Purchase Agreement, we have the right, in our sole discretion, to sell to B. Riley up to \$75.0 million of shares of our Class A Common Stock at 97% of the volume weighted average price ("VWAP") of the Class A Common Stock calculated in accordance with the Common Stock Purchase Agreement, over a period of 24 months subject to certain limitations and conditions contained in the Common Stock Purchase Agreement. Sales and timing of any sales of Class A Common Stock are solely at our election, and we are under no obligation to sell any securities to B. Riley under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement. As consideration for B. Riley's commitment to purchase shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock, we have issued 43,938 shares of our Class A Common Stock as commitment shares and will issue up to an aggregate of 43,938 shares of our Class A Common Stock if certain conditions are met. Other than the issuance of the commitment shares of our Class A Common Stock to B. Riley, we issued 1,756,993 shares of our Class A Common Stock to raise capital under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement as of December 31, 2022, aggregating to net proceeds of \$13.4 million under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement.

Proceeds from the sale of our Class A Common Stock under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement were and will continue to be used for general corporate purposes. **None.**

### ***Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities***

None.

## **Securities Authorized for Issuance Under Equity Compensation Plans**

The information required by this item will be included in our 2022 Proxy Statement and is incorporated herein by reference.

### **Item 6. Reserved**

34 40

---

### **Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

Except as otherwise noted or where the context requires otherwise, references in this report (the "Annual Report") to "we," "us" or the "Company" refer to AST SpaceMobile, Inc. and references to our "management" or our "management team" refer to our officers and directors.

The following discussion and analysis of the Company's financial condition and results of operations should be read in conjunction with our audited consolidated financial statements and notes thereto included in Item 8-Financial Statements and Supplementary Data of this Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2022, including our audited consolidated financial statements and related notes contained therein. Unless otherwise indicated, all references to "dollars" and "\$" in this Annual Report are to, and all monetary amounts in this Annual Report are presented in, U.S. dollars.

#### **Overview**

We are building the first space-based and only global Cellular Broadband network designed in space to be accessible directly by standard unmodified, off-the-shelf mobile phones or 2G/3G/4G LTE/ everyday smartphones (2G/4G-LTE/5G devices using low band devices) for commercial use, and middle band spectrum controlled by Mobile Network Operators other applications for government use utilizing our extensive intellectual property ("MNOs" IP) and patent portfolio. Our SpaceMobile Service is being designed to provide cost-effective, high-speed Cellular Broadband services to end users who are out of terrestrial cellular coverage. coverage using existing mobile devices. The SpaceMobile Service currently is planned to be provided by a constellation of high-powered, large phased-array satellites in Low Earth Orbit ("LEO") using low band and middle band spectrum controlled by Mobile Network Operators ("MNOs"). The mobile traffic will be transmitted by We are headquartered in Texas where we operate 185,000 square feet satellite

assembly, integrating and testing ("AIT") facilities. Our IP portfolio is diverse, containing numerous and various innovations of the SpaceMobile constellation direct-to-cell satellite ecosystem from space to Earth. Our IP portfolio consists of 36 patent families worldwide. As of December 31, 2023, we had more than 3,350 patent and connected via high-throughput Q/V-band links to in-country gateways patent pending claims worldwide, of which are collocated with the MNOs' cellular network infrastructure. We anticipate that users will be able to connect to the SpaceMobile Service as if they were using a local cell tower. approximately 1,050 have been officially granted or allowed.

We intend to work with MNOs to offer the SpaceMobile Service to the MNOs' end-user customers. Our vision is that users will not need to subscribe to the SpaceMobile Service directly through us, nor will they need to purchase any new or additional equipment. Instead, users will be able to access the SpaceMobile Service when prompted on their mobile device that they are no longer within range of the land-based facilities of the MNO operator or will be able to purchase a plan directly with their existing mobile provider. We generally intend to seek to use a revenue-sharing business model for SpaceMobile Service in our agreements with MNOs.

The SpaceMobile Service is expected to be highly attractive to MNOs as it will enable them to improve and differentiate their service offering without significant incremental capital investments. The SpaceMobile Service is expected to enable MNOs to augment and extend their coverage without building towers or other land-based infrastructure, including where it is not cost-justified or is difficult due to geographical challenges, such as mountainous or rugged terrain. challenges. As a result of the incremental coverage created by the planned SpaceMobile Service, we believe that our MNO partners MNOs will have the opportunity to increase subscribers' average revenue per unit user ("ARPU").

On April 1, 2019, we launched our first test satellite, BlueWalker 1 ("BW1"), BW1, which was used to validate our satellite to cellular architecture and was capable of managing communications delays from LEO and the effects of doppler in a satellite to ground cellular environment using the 4G-LTE protocols.protocol.

We launched our BlueWalker 3 ("BW3") test satellite on September 10, 2022. On November 14, 2022, we and announced the completion of the deployment of the communication phased array antenna of the BW3 test satellite in orbit. orbit on November 14, 2022. On December 14, 2022 April 25, 2023, we provided an update with respect announced that we had successfully completed two-way voice calls directly to certain BW3 test satellite performance and testing activities, including the construction of a telemetry, tracking and control network, implementation of an end to end testing of the flight control software to control communications array, testing patented doppler and delay hardware and software solutions, and the installation of a ground network for end-to-end testing at various testing locations.

As of March 31, 2023, we are continuing the initial testing in efforts to achieve Cellular Broadband communications between the BW3 test satellite and a standard/ standard unmodified cellular phone using 3GPP standard frequencies. Following the completion of initial testing, we plan to continue performing similar tests of these Cellular Broadband speeds with various MNOs internationally smartphones using the BW3 test satellite and a standard/unmodified cellular phone as well as other aspects of the SpaceMobile network. As of December 31, 2022 and as of March 31, 2023 satellite. On June 21, 2023, we incurred announced that we had achieved repeated successful 4G download speeds of above 10 megabits per second ("Mbps") to standard unmodified smartphones using the BW3 test satellite. On September 19, 2023, we announced that we had achieved repeated successful two-way voice calls directly to standard unmodified smartphones

using 5G connectivity and successful download speeds of approximately \$92.1 million and \$92.3 million 14 Mbps utilizing 5 megahertz ("Mhz") of capitalized costs (including launch cost and non-recurring engineering costs) related low band spectrum via the BW3 test satellite. We intend to the assembly, continue testing and deployment capabilities of the BW3 test satellite, respectively, including further testing with cellular service providers and devices.

41

---

We are also currently designing in the advanced stages of assembling and assembling testing our constellation first generation of BlueBird commercial BB satellites ("BB" Block 1 BB satellites) satellites. We are leveraging skills, know-how and technological expertise derived from the design and assembly of our BW3 test satellite in the development and assembly of our BB

35

---

satellite platform. We are currently assembling the first generation of commercial BB satellites ("Block 1 BB satellites"). We expect the The Block 1 BB satellites will be of similar size and weight to the BW3 test satellite, includes our own designed array solar panels and battery systems, and will have design improvements for enhanced power efficiency and ten times higher throughput designed to increase capacity. We currently expect to launch than the BW3 test satellite. The completion of five Block 1 BB satellites during has been delayed as compared to our target completion timeline due to a delay in the first quarter commencement of integration and testing of five Block 1 BB satellites. The failure by suppliers of two key subsystems to meet their contractual delivery timelines contributed to this delay. To mitigate such risks in the future and reduce our dependency on these suppliers, we have reached an agreement with the supplier of one of the subsystems and obtained a non-exclusive and worldwide license of the design and manufacturing rights of this subsystem for use in our Block 2 BB satellites. We have also replaced the supplier of the other subsystem with a new supplier with whom we have completed a new design and own the IP of this subsystem. The new supplier will manufacture and supply this subsystem for use in our Block 2 BB satellites at a cost that is expected to be materially lower than the current cost of this subsystem. We expect these subsystems to not delay the timely completion of future BB satellites.

We currently estimate we will transport the five Block 1 BB satellites from our assembly facilities to the launch site between July and August of 2024 and have entered into to await a Launch Services Agreement with SpaceX for the launch of the five BB Block 1 satellites. window. This launch window will be disclosed once a window can be agreed upon. The exact timing of the new launch which is expected to carry five Block 1 BB satellites, is schedule will be contingent on a number of factors, including satisfactory and timely completion of assembly, integrating and testing of five Block 1 BB the satellites, regulatory approvals, launch provider availability, logistics, weather conditions, and other factors, many of which are beyond our control. We have a contractual right under the launch services agreement to reschedule the date of our dedicated launch, subject to the launch vehicle provider's launch schedule availability and payment of a change fee.

The SpaceMobile Service has not been launched and therefore has not yet generated any revenue. Following the launch deployment and testing deployment of five Block 1 BB satellites, we currently plan to initiate a limited, noncontinuous SpaceMobile Service in targeted geographical areas, including in the United States, and seek to generate revenue from such service. We are expanding our efforts on ground infrastructure development for commercial readiness and integrating our SpaceMobile service into the MNOs' infrastructure to enable us to initiate commercial services. Prior to initiating such service, we will need to obtain regulatory approvals in each jurisdiction where we would provide such service and would need to enter into definitive agreements with MNOs relating to the offering of such service in each jurisdiction.

We believe expect to enter into commercial agreements with MNOs for the deployment use of our five Block 1 BB satellites, although there can be no assurance that we will be successful in entering into these agreements on terms acceptable to us or at all. In 2024, we expect to begin generating revenue from the resale of gateway equipment and subsequent associated services to MNOs and other third parties, and from completing defined milestones under an agreement with a prime contractor for the U.S. government. We believe initiation of limited, noncontinuous SpaceMobile Service as well as completing the milestones under the agreement with a prime contractor for the U.S. government will help to demonstrate the advantages of our satellite-based Cellular Broadband service in the marketplace. This market. These market activity may activities will commence while we continue the development and testing of the next generation of the BB satellites.

Our next generation of commercial BB satellites ("Block 2 BB satellites") are expected to derive greater performance through the introduction of our own AST5000 Application Specific Integrated Circuit ("ASIC") chip, which we believe will provide enable materially greater throughput capacity of up to 40 MHz per beam to support 120 Mbps peak data rates and up to 10,000 MHz of processing bandwidth per Block 2 BB satellite, require less power and offer a lower overall unit cost. We expect that have completed the design and have commenced the tape-out of our ASIC chip in March 2024. The Block 2 BB satellites are expected to be approximately 2,400 square feet in size, almost 3.5 times bigger than the Block 1 BB satellites, and will also benefit from have the advantages largest phased array ever deployed in a LEO for commercial use exceeding the phased array of the BW3 test satellite and planned Block 1 BB satellites. We believe the larger aperture array which provides is expected to provide greater spectrum reuse, enhanced signal strength and increased capacity, thereby reducing the necessary number of satellites to achieve service coverage as compared to smaller apertures.

We expect continue to launch make progress towards the completion of the design and development of our Block 2 BB satellites beginning in 2024 following satellites. We believe we will benefit from the launch skills, technological expertise, and deployment manufacturing know-how derived from the assembly and testing of our Block 1 BB satellite in the development and assembly of our Block 2 BB satellites. We began the design and development of the Block 2 BB satellites prior to the design and development of Block 1 BB satellites. We have commenced planning and procurement activities to begin the assembly, integration and testing of the Block 2 BB satellites and have entered into agreements and placed orders for procurement of materials required for manufacturing the satellite components, and subsystems required for the assembly of Block 2 BB satellites. We plan to continue to manufacture the satellite components and subsystems for Block 2 BB satellites as soon as the assembly and testing of Block 1 BB satellites are complete. The first Block 2 BB satellite will be based on a FPGA chip and future Block 2 BB satellites will use the ASIC chip. We have entered into an agreement with a launch service provider to launch the first Block 2 BB satellite. The agreement has a launch window of December 15, 2024 to March 31, 2025. The exact timing of this launch is contingent on a number of factors, including

satisfactory and timely completion of the design, assembly and testing of the Block 2 BB satellite, regulatory approvals, availability of launch windows by the launch providers,

logistics, and other factors, many of which are beyond our control. We have a contractual right under the launch services agreement to reschedule the date of our dedicated launch, subject to the launch vehicle provider's launch schedule availability.

We are developing a phased satellite deployment plan and corresponding commercial launch plan of the SpaceMobile Service based on targeted geographical areas to provide the SpaceMobile Service to the most commercially attractive MNO markets. This prioritization of coverage is designed to minimize the capital required to initiate and operate commercial service that generates cash flows from operating activities sooner. We expect that such a successful commercial service would enable us to attract additional capital to continue to assemble and launch additional BB satellites to expand our capacity and geographic coverage area, although there can be no assurance that such capital would be available on terms acceptable to us, or at all.

We plan to achieve substantial service in the selected, targeted geographical areas with the launch and operation of 25 BB satellites and achieve substantial service in all targeted geographical areas to meet our long term business goals with the launch and operation of approximately 95 BB satellites. We anticipate launching and deploying additional satellites beyond the initial 95 satellites in order to enhance coverage and system capacity in response to incremental market demand. Our current plan is subject to numerous uncertainties, many of which are beyond our control, including satisfactory and timely completion of assembly and testing of the satellites, availability of launch windows by the launch providers, our ability to raise capital, proposed orbits and resulting satellite coverage, launch costs, ability to enter into agreements with MNOs, regulatory approvals, and other factors. We may adopt a strategy for commercial launch of the SpaceMobile Service, including the nature and type of services offered and the geographic areas where we may launch such services, that may differ materially from our current plan.

The SpaceMobile Service has not been launched and therefore has not yet generated revenue. After we begin to launch and deploy our Block 1 BB satellites, we currently plan to initiate a limited, noncontinuous SpaceMobile Service in targeted geographical areas and seek to generate revenue from such service. Prior to initiating such service, we will need to obtain regulatory approvals in each jurisdiction where we would provide such service and would need to enter into definitive agreements with the MNOs relating to the offering of such service in each jurisdiction.

We operate from multiple locations that include our corporate headquarters and 185,000 square feet satellite assembly, integrating and testing ("AIT") facilities in Texas, and AIT and engineering and development locations elsewhere in the United States, India, Scotland, Spain and Israel. In December 2022, we started our new research and development center

in India to support our global engineering operations and access the vast talent pool of engineers working in space, satellites, and telecommunications sector. Our India operations will focus on research and development of next-generation hardware, software, space-related technologies and operations.

We are continuing to make investments to industrialize the assembly, integration, and testing processes for the production of the BB satellites. We are hiring, and expect to continue hiring, assembly, integration, and testing employees necessary for the production of the BB satellites and engineers that will be required to test and integrate the BB satellites. We are also actively engaged with the third-party vendors to secure supply of components and materials for our BB satellites. Furthermore, we are continuing to expand our research and development ("R&D") efforts for the development of electronics and subsystems required for BB satellites and cellular and ground infrastructure and gateways.

---

On July 2, 2022, AST LLC entered into a share sale and purchase agreement (the "Share Sale and Purchase Agreement") for sale of its 51% interest in its former subsidiary, NanoAvionika UAB ("Nano") (the "Share Sale") to Kongsberg Defence & Aerospace AS, a private limited liability company incorporated under the laws of Norway. The Share Sale and Purchase Agreement provided for a purchase price of €65.0 million in total enterprise value for the purchase of Nano. On September 6, 2022, AST LLC completed the Share Sale for proceeds, net of transaction costs and working capital adjustments, of \$26.6 million and recognized a net gain of \$24.5 million in Other income (expense), net in the audited Consolidated Statement of Operations. Upon closing of the Nano Share Sale, all amounts outstanding under the Nano Financing Agreement were paid by Kongsberg Defence & Aerospace AS and the Nano Financing Agreement was terminated. See the notes to the audited consolidated financial statements contained elsewhere in this Annual Report on Form 10-K for further information.

We are an early stage and emerging growth company and, as such, we are subject to all of the risks associated with early stage and emerging growth companies. Please refer to Risk Factors contained in Part I, "Item 1A. Risk Factors" included in our Annual Report.

## **Recent Developments**

### **Convertible Security Investment Agreement**

On **February 16, 2023** **January 16, 2024**, we **filed** entered into a **petition** Convertible Security Investment Agreement (the "Investment Agreement") with AT&T, Google and Vodafone (the "Investors") to issue subordinated convertible notes for an aggregate principal amount of \$110.0 million (such notes, the "Notes" and such investments, the "Investments") to the Investors. The Notes bear interest at a rate of 5.50% per year, payable semi-annually in the Delaware Court of Chancery pursuant to Section 205 arrears beginning on June 30, 2024, in cash or in kind at our option. The Notes have a ten-year term unless earlier converted.

The holders of the **DGCL** seeking **(i)** Notes (the "Holders") may at their option convert the **validation** Notes (subject to certain exceptions) at any time on or after **January 16, 2025** at an initial conversion rate of 173.9130 shares of Class A Common Stock per \$1,000 principal amount of Notes (equivalent to an initial conversion price of \$5.75 per share of Class A Common Stock). On or after **January 16, 2025**, we also have an option to require the Holders to convert the Notes (subject to certain exceptions) at the same initial conversion rate of 173.9130 shares of Class A Common Stock per

\$1,000 principal amount of Notes if the VWAP of the April 1, 2021 stockholder vote approving Class A Common Stock has been at least 130% of the proposal to amend and restate our certificate of incorporation, as amended to give conversion price then in effect to the Charter Proposal (including its filing and effectiveness, in each case as of April 6, 2021) (the "New Charter") and (ii) the validation and declaration of effectiveness of (a) our certificate of incorporation, as amended to give effect to the Charter Proposal (including its filing and effectiveness, in each case as of April 6, 2021) (the "New Charter") and (b) the securities issued or to be issued in reliance for 30 consecutive trading days, on the approval immediately succeeding trading day after the last trading day of such 30 day period. The Notes may be accelerated upon the Charter Proposal and/or the validity occurrence of the New Charter, as certain events of the respective dates of issuance to resolve any uncertainty with respect to those matters (captioned, *In re AST SpaceMobile, Inc.*, C.A. No. 2023-0202-LWW (Del. Ch.)). On March 14, 2023, the Court of Chancery approved our request for relief default and entered an order under Section 205 of the DGCL fundamental change. Refer to Note 13: Commitments and Contingencies 17: Subsequent events in the accompanying notes to the audited consolidated financial statements for further information.

#### ***Letter Agreements***

On January 16, 2024, in connection with the Investments, each of AT&T Services, Inc. ("AT&T Services"), Google and Vodafone Group Services have entered into letter agreements with us (the "Letter Agreements").

The letter agreement between AT&T Services and us provides, among other things, that AT&T Services will make a non-refundable \$20.0 million commercial payment for prepaid service revenue, creditable against our future service revenue, due after the launch and successful initial operation of the first five commercial satellites. AT&T Services also submitted a purchase order under a separate agreement for purchase of network equipment from us to support planned commercial service. Under the letter agreement, we are required to use reasonable best efforts to cause our Stockholders' Agreement, dated April 6, 2021 to be amended such that AT&T Services shall have the right to nominate, and the parties to such Stockholders' Agreement agree to vote for and cause the appointment of, any representative of AT&T Services that it determines in its sole discretion to (i) serve as a non-voting observer to our board of directors or (ii) serve as a director to our board of directors.

43

---

We entered into a letter agreement with Google whereby the parties will negotiate and execute a definitive agreement to provide, among other things, certain services to each other and have agreed to collaborate on product development, testing and implementation plans for SpaceMobile network connectivity on Android devices.

The letter agreement between Vodafone Group Services and us provides, among other things, for an initial revenue commitment of \$25.0 million to us to be paid by Vodafone Group Services over a two and a half year period to be defined in a future definitive agreement for us to provide connectivity services. Vodafone also submitted a purchase order for purchase of network equipment from us to support planned commercial service.

### January 2024 Common Stock Offering

On January 23, 2024, we issued 32,258,064 shares of Class A Common Stock in a public offering and received proceeds of \$93.6 million, net of underwriting commissions of \$6.0 million and transaction costs of \$0.4 million. We provided a 30-day option to the underwriting agent to purchase up to an additional 4,838,709 shares of Class A Common Stock (the "Option Shares") from us on the same terms and conditions. On January 25, 2024, the Option Shares were exercised in full. The offering of the Option Shares closed on January 29, 2024 for proceeds of \$14.1 million, net of underwriting commissions of \$0.9 million. Proceeds from the sale of our Class A common stock under the January 2024 Common Stock Offering were and are expected to be used for general corporate purposes.

### Impact of COVID-19 Pandemic and Global Macroeconomic Conditions and Geopolitical Conflicts

We continue to closely monitor the impact of the COVID-19 pandemic and macroeconomic conditions, including heightened inflation, slower growth or recession, changes to fiscal and monetary policies, higher interest rates, volatility in the capital markets, and supply chain challenges, and geopolitical conflicts on all aspects of our business across geographies, including how it has and may continue to impact our operations, workforce, suppliers, and our ability to raise additional capital to fund operating and capital expenditures.

Changes in the prices of satellite materials due to inflation, supply chain challenges, and other macroeconomic factors may affect our capital costs estimates to build and launch the satellite constellation and adversely affect our financial condition. The extent of impact of these factors on our business will depend on future developments that are highly uncertain and cannot be predicted with confidence at this time. To date, these factors have not had a material impact on our technology development efforts or results of our operations. However, if macroeconomic conditions deteriorate or there are unforeseen developments, with respect to the current COVID-19 pandemic, our results of operations and financial condition may be adversely affected.

We operate from multiple locations that include our corporate headquarters and 185,000 square feet AIT facilities in Texas where the final AIT is performed, and engineering and development centers elsewhere in the United States, India, Scotland, Spain and Israel. Our operations in Israel constitute approximately 5% of the consolidated total assets and approximately 12% of consolidated total operating expenses of the Company. To date, our operations in Israel have not been materially impacted by the geopolitical conflict in the Middle East. We currently do not expect potential interruptions to our operations in Israel to have a material impact on the Company.

### Factors Affecting Comparability of Our Future Results of Operations to Our Historical Results of Operations

The consolidated assets, liabilities Our historical financial performance has been, and results of operations for we expect our financial performance in the period from January 1, 2021 up future to April 6, 2021, the date the Company completed a business combination (the "Business Combination"), are those of our accounting predecessor, AST LLC. After the Business Combination, upon obtaining additional funding of \$416.9 million, we expanded research and development initiatives, made significant progress on the BW3 test satellite and design of the BB satellites, increased the headcount of employees and consultants, and expanded our operations through December 31, 2021.

During the year ended December 31, 2022, we significantly expanded to support our growing operations. We completed the development of our BW3 test satellite and launched it in September 2022, established network and software operations centers, advanced research and development initiatives for the design and development of Block 1 and Block

2 BB satellites, secured long-lead components, made significant progress in Application-Specific Integrated Circuit ("ASIC") development, industrialized our AIT facilities for production of BB satellites, and increased the headcount of employees and consultants. In addition, we also sold our 51% interest in our former subsidiary, Nano, on September 6, 2022. Following the completion of the sale of Nano, we no longer generate revenue and do not expect to generate revenue in future periods until we launch the SpaceMobile Service.

Our future results of operations will be driven by our ability to execute on our strategy and strategy. Our future results of operations could differ materially from the historical results of operations. We intend operations as we expect to continue to make necessary capital investments to industrialize our AIT facilities.

procure satellite materials and components for complete the assembly and testing of launch the five Block 1 BB satellites, continue initiate the limited, noncontinuous SpaceMobile Service in certain targeted geographical areas, fulfill our obligations under the contracts for gateway stations and under an agreement with a prime contractor of a U.S. government contract, complete the tape-out of our ASIC chip, set up ground cellular and infrastructure for commercial readiness, complete the design of the Block 2 BB satellites, commence the assembly, integration and testing of the BW3 test satellite in collaboration with various MNOs, set up ground infrastructure in preparation for commercial service, complete the ASIC development, continue the research and development initiatives for design and development of Block 2 BB satellites, and increase launch the headcount of our employees and consultants to support the production and launch of the first Block 12 BB satellites. All of these factors could result in materially different capital and operating expenses during future periods.

satellite.

### Components of Results of Operations

#### Revenues

To date, we have not generated any revenues from our SpaceMobile Service. Our former subsidiary, Nano, All revenues during the year ended December 31, 2022 were generated revenue from the development and manufacture of satellite technology, and ancillary sales and services globally. Nano also sold individual satellite parts, subsystems, and software to be configured to customers' satellites, and entered into "rideshare" type agreements whereby Nano provided hosted payload services using customers' payloads integrated with Nano-owned satellite buses for scheduled launches. Accordingly, all revenue presented herein exclusively relates to Nano's sales of goods and services by our former subsidiary, Nano. Following the completion of the sale of Nano on September 6, 2022, we no longer did not generate any revenue. Following the launch and deployment of five Block 1 BB satellites, we currently plan to initiate a limited, noncontinuous SpaceMobile Service in targeted geographical areas, including in the United States, subject to obtaining regulatory approval and negotiating and executing definitive agreements with MNOs, and seek to

generate revenue and do not from such service. In 2024, we expect to generate begin generating revenue in future periods until we launch from the SpaceMobile Service. resale of gateway equipment and associated services to MNOs and other third parties, and from completing defined milestones under an agreement with a prime contractor for a U.S. government contract.

#### *Cost of Sales*

Cost of sales includes during the purchase price year ended December 31, 2022 consisted of various products used and services performed the costs incurred to execute fulfill Nano's sales contracts. Cost of sales also includes operational costs to fulfill Nano customer orders, including costs for Nano employees and overhead. Following the completion of the sale of Nano on September 6, 2022, we did not incur any costs of sales. We do not expect to generate revenue and incur associated cost of sales in future periods until we launch the SpaceMobile Service and/or begin to generate revenue from the resale of gateway equipment and associated services to MNOs and third parties, and meet future milestones under the agreement with a prime contractor for a U.S. government contract.

#### *Engineering Services Costs*

Engineering services costs are charged to expense as incurred. Engineering services costs consist primarily of the expenses associated with our ongoing engineering efforts related to integration, testing, cost of employees and consultants involved in the design and development of our the BB satellites, as well as managing the cost network and satellite operations centers, and indirect costs related to the assembly, integration and testing of internal staff (such as engineers and consultants) to support these efforts the BB satellites, license cost, and general expenses related to AIT facilities and engineering development centers.

#### *General and Administrative Costs*

General and administrative costs include the costs of insurance, cost of non-engineering personnel and personnel related expenses such as recruiting and travel and lodging expenses, software licensing and subscriptions, office and facilities expenses, investor relations, and professional services, including public relations, accounting and legal fees.

#### *Research and Development Costs*

R&D costs are charged to expense as incurred. R&D costs consist principally of non-recurring development activities in which we typically engage third-party vendors. Currently, major vendors and are largely driven by the achievement of milestones that trigger payments and costs of materials in supplies consumed in the development activities. R&D activities include engaging with vendors costs are expected to help design and develop the electronic componentry, software, and mechanical deployment systems to be used in the BB satellites and in connection with the planned SpaceMobile Service. fluctuate quarter over quarter depending on achievement of milestones.

#### *Depreciation and Amortization*

Depreciation and amortization expense includes amounts depreciation expense related to property and equipment including the BW3 test satellite, as well as definite lived intangible assets. Once the necessary testing to achieve Cellular Broadband communications between BW3 test satellite and a standard/unmodified cellular phone is complete, we expect

to depreciate We began depreciating the BW3 test satellite as of April 25, 2023 over its expected remaining useful life of two years resulting in a significant increase in future depreciation expense. approximately 16 months.

#### *Gain (Loss) on Remeasurement of Warrant Liabilities*

Public Warrants and private placement warrants Private Placement Warrants issued by us are accounted for as liability-classified instruments at their initial fair value on the date of issuance. They are remeasured on each balance sheet date and changes in the estimated fair value are recognized as an unrealized gain or loss in the audited Consolidated Statements consolidated statements of Operations. operations.

38

---

#### *Other Interest Income (Expense), Net*

Other Interest income (expense), net consists of the gain from sale of Nano, interest earned on cash and cash equivalents held by us in interest bearing demand deposit accounts, net of any interest expense as well as transaction and amortization of debt issuance costs incurred in connection associated with the Common Stock Purchase Agreement defined below in Liquidity our debt arrangements.

#### *Other Income (Expense), Net*

Other income (expense), net primarily consists of non-operating expense and Capital Resources, and other miscellaneous non-operating items, income, including foreign exchange gains or losses.

#### *Income Tax Expense*

AST LLC is treated as a partnership for U.S. federal and state income tax purposes. Also, we had a controlling ownership interest in our former subsidiary, Nano, a Lithuanian company, through September 6, 2022, that is subject to foreign income taxes and is also treated as a partnership for U.S. federal and state and local taxes. Accordingly, for U.S. federal and state income tax purposes, all income, losses, and other tax attributes pass through to the members' income tax returns, and no U.S. federal and state and local provision for income taxes has been

45

---

recorded for these entities AST LLC in the audited consolidated financial statements. Certain foreign wholly-owned entities are taxed as corporations in the jurisdictions in which they operate, and accruals for such taxes are included in the audited consolidated financial statements.

We recorded net deferred tax assets of \$94.9 million as of December 31, 2022 primarily related to the difference between the book value and tax basis of our investment in AST LLC, and net operating loss carryforwards. We have assessed the realizability of our deferred tax assets and in that analysis have considered the relevant positive and negative evidence

available to determine whether it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will be realized. As a result, we have recorded a full valuation allowance against our deferred tax assets.

#### Noncontrolling Interest

Noncontrolling interest primarily represents the equity interest in AST LLC held by the Existing Equityholders members other than us. As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, the Existing Equityholders' equity ownership percentage noncontrolling interest in AST LLC was approximately 64.2% 58.7%. Also, For the year ended December 31, 2022, noncontrolling interest includes also included approximately 49% 49.0% equity interests in our former subsidiary, Nano, held by equityholders other than us up to September 6, 2022. us. On September 6, 2022, the noncontrolling interest was eliminated in connection with the sale of the Company's 51% interest in Nano. We attribute attributed a portion of net income or loss generated at AST LLC and Nano to the noncontrolling interests interest based on their ownership interests.

39

#### Results of Operations

We report our results of operations under one operating segment. The following table sets forth a summary of our audited Consolidated Statements consolidated statements of Operations operations for the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 (in thousands) and the discussion that follows compares the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, to the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022.

	Year ended December 31,				Year ended December 31,			
			\$	%				
			Chan	Chang				
	2022	2021	ge	e	2023	2022	\$ Change	% Change
Revenues	13,8 \$ 25	12, \$ 405	1,42 \$ 0	11 %	\$ -	\$ 13,825	\$ (13,825)	(100) %
Cost of sales (exclusive of items shown separately below)	6,71 4	7,5 63	(84 9)	(1 1)	-	6,714	(6,714)	(100)
Gross profit	7,11 1	4,8 42	2,26 9	47	-	7,111	(7,111)	(100)
<u>Operating expenses:</u>	54,2	29,	24,6					
Engineering services	12	599	13	83	78,811	54,212	24,599	45

General and administrative costs	48,332	35,636	96	36	41,601	48,332	(6,731)	(14)
Research and development costs	45,620	23,440	80	95	47,486	45,620	1,866	4
Depreciation and amortization	1,056	4,711	2,9	1,79	54,469	4,711	49,758	1,056
<b>Total operating expenses</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>222,367</b>	<b>87</b>	<b>67</b>	<b>152,875</b>	<b>69,492</b>	<b>222,367</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>Other income:</b>								
<b>Other income (expense):</b>								
Gain on remeasurement of warrant liabilities	(10,128)	19,114	8,766	14	3,34	8,986	19,114	(53)
Other income (expense), net	116	(1,26,1)	(1,24,1)	54	33	(1,26,1)	(1,24,1)	116
<b>Total other income, net</b>	<b>(148)</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>68</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>68</b>
Interest income (expense), net	2,675	2,633	42					
Other (expense) income, net	(31,811)	(31,811)	(31,811)	(10,290)	(10,290)	(21,521)	(21,521)	(148)
<b>Total other income (expense), net</b>	<b>(97)</b>	<b>1,371</b>	<b>43,268</b>	<b>1,371</b>	<b>1,371</b>	<b>(41,897)</b>	<b>(41,897)</b>	<b>(97)</b>
<b>Loss before income tax expense</b>								
Income tax expense	116	(102,496)	(102,496)	(102,496)	(102,496)	(118,500)	(118,500)	116
<b>Net loss before allocation to noncontrolling interest</b>	<b>116</b>	<b>172</b>	<b>172</b>	<b>172</b>	<b>172</b>	<b>116</b>	<b>116</b>	<b>116</b>
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	89	(135,116)	(135,116)	(135,116)	(135,116)	(63,643)	(63,643)	89
<b>Net loss attributable to common stockholders</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>177</b>

### Revenues

Total All revenues increased by \$1.4 million, or 11%, to \$13.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2021. The increase in revenue was primarily attributable to the completion of performance obligations associated with both new and existing Nano customer contracts during the year ended December 31, 2022 prior to were generated from sales and services provided by our former subsidiary, Nano. Following the completion of the sale of our 51% interest in Nano on September 6, 2022, after which we did not generate no longer generated revenue.

#### Cost of Sales

Total cost Cost of sales decreased by \$(0.8) million, or (11)%, to \$6.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2021. The decrease in cost of sales relates to a decrease in cost under new and existing Nano sales contracts during the year ended December 31, 2022 prior consisted of the costs incurred to fulfill Nano's sales contracts. Following the completion of the sale of our 51% interest in Nano on September 6, 2022, we no longer generated revenue and incurred associated cost of sales.

46

---

#### Engineering Services Costs

Total engineering services costs increased by \$24.6 million, or 83% 45%, to \$54.2 million \$78.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022. The increase was primarily attributable to a \$20.7 million \$10.5 million increase in payroll and employee related costs, including stock-based compensation expense, as a result of due to an increase in headcount to support growing and milestones bonuses paid upon achievement of certain milestones, an increase of \$10.2 million in AIT facilities and activities and engineering development centers costs including managing mission operations and ground infrastructure and travel expenses, and an increase of \$3.9 million in 2022. The remaining \$3.9 million increase relates to general expenses at engineering centers to support engineering efforts related to the integration, indirect costs associated with testing and development of our satellites. production activities.

40

---

#### General and Administrative Costs

Total general and administrative costs increased decreased by \$12.7 million \$6.7 million, or 36% 14%, to \$48.3 million \$41.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022. The increase decrease was primarily due to increased payroll and employee related driven by elimination of \$5.7 million of costs office related costs, travel expenses, insurance costs and software

licensing. To support growing operations in 2022, payroll and employee related costs, including stock-based compensation expense, office related costs and travel expenses increased by \$3.8 million, \$2.7 million and \$2.2 million, respectively. Insurance costs increased by \$1.7 million due to increased needs related to D&O insurance, intellectual property insurance Nano as Nano is no longer consolidated following its sale in September 2022, and insurance coverage for our expanded facilities. The remaining \$2.3 million increase relates to increased professional services fees, software licensing costs, a net decrease of \$1.0 million in travel expenses and other miscellaneous expenses.

#### *Research and Development Costs*

Total research and development ("R&D") costs increased by \$22.2 million \$1.9 million, or 95% 4%, to \$45.6 million \$47.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022. R&D costs are during the year ended December 31, 2023 were incurred primarily attributable to third-party for completing the design and development efforts relating to of BB Block 1 satellites, progressing the design and development of certain subsystems for the BB Block 2 satellites, to be used in completing the SpaceMobile constellation. Prior to the second quarter IP design of 2021, our operations primarily related to constructing the BW3 test satellite, ASIC chip, and therefore continued development of ground infrastructure programs for commercial readiness. R&D efforts costs during the year ended December 31, 2022 were limited. incurred primarily for the design and development of the BB Block 2 satellites and developing our ASIC chip. The increase in R&D costs was primarily due to increased driven by increases for the design and development efforts of the BB Block 1 satellites and the development of ground infrastructure programs for our BB satellites along with achievement of certain milestones commercial readiness, which were offset by completing the IP design of our ASIC chip and reduced expenditure on the design and development program. R&D costs are expected to fluctuate quarter over quarter, as R&D costs are largely driven by of certain subsystems for the achievement of milestones that trigger payments. BB Block 2 satellites during the current period.

#### *Depreciation and Amortization*

Total depreciation and amortization expense increased by \$1.8 million \$49.8 million, or 62% 1,056%, to \$4.7 million \$54.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022. The increase was primarily due to commencing depreciation of the purchase of additional fixed assets and leasehold improvements over BW3 test satellite from April 25, 2023, the last twelve months ended December 31, 2022. date on which we determined that BW3 had met its intended use.

#### *Gain on Remeasurement of Warrant Liabilities*

Decrease in fair value of warrant liabilities resulted in a gain of \$19.1 million \$9.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 as compared to the gain of \$15.8 million \$19.1 million during the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022.

#### *Other Interest Income (expense) (Expense), net*

Total other interest income (expense), net was \$24.2 million increased by less than \$0.1 million, or 2%, to \$2.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 as compared to \$(2.0) the year ended December 31, 2022. The

increase was driven by an increase of \$4.3 million in interest income earned on cash and cash equivalents held in interest bearing demand deposit accounts, partially offset by an increase of \$4.2 million in interest expense and amortization of debt issuance costs incurred in connection with our debt arrangements.

#### *Other (Expense) Income, net*

Total other (expense) income, net was \$(10.3) million for the year ended December 31, 2023 as compared to \$21.5 million in the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022. Other income (expense), net for The decrease of \$31.8 million was primarily due to the year ended December 31, 2022 primarily included a net gain of \$24.5 million \$24.6 million recognized in connection with the sale of Nano Sale on September 6, 2022, \$2.4 million in 2022, a payment of interest income, net \$10.0 million in the third quarter of interest expense, from 2023 to a related party in accordance with the cash and cash equivalents held at financial institutions, contractual agreement, partially offset by \$1.4 million of transaction costs incurred in connection with the Common Stock Purchase Agreement Equity Line of Credit (as defined herein) in 2022 and \$1.3 million a decrease of \$1.4 million in other non-operating income and foreign exchange loss during the year ended December 31, 2022. Other income (expense), net for the year ended December 31, 2021 primarily included a \$2.7 million write-off of deposits for launch service and \$0.7 million income from other non operating activities.loss.

#### *Income Tax Expense*

The provision for income taxes was \$1.7 million and \$0.6 million for the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and \$0.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2021, 2022, respectively. The consolidated effective tax rate for years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 was (1)% and 0%, respectively. The low effective rate is driven by the loss attributable to the noncontrolling interest and the valuation allowance, and the difference in the effective rates between periods is driven by income tax expense assessed against non-U.S earnings, (1%). Refer to Note 17:14: Income Taxes in the accompanying notes to the audited consolidated financial statements for further information.

#### *Net Loss Attributable to Noncontrolling Interest*

Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest was \$71.5 million \$135.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 as compared to \$42.7 million \$71.5 million in the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022. This increase in net loss correlates with the increase in net loss generated at AST LLC given the noncontrolling interest represents a portion of such net loss.

#### **Liquidity and Capital Resources**

We do not expect to generate revenue in future periods until we launch the SpaceMobile Service. Accordingly, our current sources of liquidity are cash and cash equivalents on hand and access to equity programs currently in place, which consist of an Equity

Line of Credit (as defined herein) and an At The Market Equity the ATM Program ("ATM Equity Program") (as defined herein). As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, we had \$239.3 million \$88.1 million of cash and cash equivalents on hand, which includes \$0.7 million including \$2.5 million of restricted cash. In January 2024, we raised net proceeds of \$107.7 million from the issuance of Class A Common Stock through our Common Stock Offering and \$110.0 million from the issuance of convertible notes under the Convertible Security Investment Agreement. We believe our cash and cash equivalents on hand, together with which is estimated at \$210.8 million as of March 31, 2024, and our ability to raise capital through access to the Equity Line of Credit and the ATM Equity Program, will be sufficient to meet our current working capital needs, planned operating expenses and capital expenditures for a period of the next 12 months from the date of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

The design, assembly, integration, testing and launch of satellites and related ground infrastructure is capital intensive. We currently estimate the capital expenditure, primarily direct materials and launch costs, required for the design, assembly, integration, testing and launch of our first 5 the five Block 1 BB satellites to be between approximately \$100.0 million \$115.0 million, and \$110.0 million. we have paid over 90% of this expenditure as of the date of this Annual Report on Form 10-K. We currently believe that the estimated average capital expenditure costs, consisting primarily of direct materials and launch costs, required for the design, assembly, integration, testing and launch of a constellation of 95 Block 2 BB satellite satellites to be approximately \$16.0 million to \$18.0 million. per satellite. The estimated capital cost per Block 2 BB satellite is based on a number of factors, including securing launch contracts with more favorable terms, bulk ordering of parts and components, cost reductions due to the benefits of economies of scale and process improvements, and other factors. If we are unable to achieve these cost reductions, process improvements, and favorable launch contracts, the average capital cost of the satellite configuration has increased due to the impacts of inflation, supply chain disruptions, design changes, Block 2 BB satellites will be higher and increase in the cost of electronic components, launch costs and other aspects of our design and assembly activities. such variations could be material.

We believe we need to launch and operate 25 BB satellites (5(five Block 1 BB satellites and 20 Block 2 BB satellites) in order to provide coverage to the most commercially attractive MNO markets. We In addition to the cash and cash equivalents we had on hand as of March 28, 2024, we currently estimate we will need to raise approximately \$550.0 million \$350.0 million to \$650.0 million \$400.0 million to fund operating expenses and capital expenditures necessary to design, assemble and launch 20 Block 2 BB satellites and operate a constellation of 25 BB satellites satellites.

We evaluate our market, product and coverage plans based upon the attractiveness of certain markets, our technology, regulatory concerns and our access to continue capital and other resources. We believe we can develop satellite configurations which target delivering service to provide SpaceMobile service.certain attractive markets without the necessity of building a constellation which covers the entire globe. This modularity of our satellite configuration enables us to alter the timing and size of our satellite roll out and provides us flexibility to dynamically change our market plans and

capital requirements. As a result, we believe we have the ability to accelerate or slow down our business plan depending upon the availability of capital to support our strategies.

We require capital to fund our operating and capital expenditures. We intend to seek plan to raise additional capital prior to the commencement of the commercial services through the issuance of equity, equity related equity-linked or debt securities (secured or unsecured), secured loan or unsecured loans or other debt facilities, or through obtaining and credit from government or financial institutions or commercial partners, including through our existing Equity Line of Credit and the ATM Equity Program. We also intend to seek to draw the remaining available credit under the Senior Secured Credit Facility. Our ability to access the capital markets during this period of volatility may require us to modify our current expectations. The additional capital will be necessary to fund ongoing operations, continue research, development and design efforts, improve infrastructure, and launch satellites. There can be no assurance that additional funds will be available to us on favorable terms or at all. If we cannot raise additional funds when needed in the future, our financial condition, results of operations, business and prospects may be materially and adversely affected.

We have 48

#### Commitments

The following table summarizes the contractual obligations, including non-cancellable minimum principal and interest payments required on all of our outstanding debt and operating leases with terms expiring through November 2033. Rent expense from our operating leases was \$0.9 million and \$1.0 million for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively, included in General and administrative costs on the audited Consolidated Statements of Operations. Future minimum annual rental payments required under these operating lease agreements by period due date, as of December 31, 2022 is presented within Note 7: Leases in the accompanying notes to the audited consolidated financial statements. December 31, 2023 (in thousands):

Contractual Obligations	Payments Due by Period						
	2024	2025	2026	2027	2028	Thereaft	Total
Debt	\$ 252	\$ 2,920	\$ 55,125	\$ 2,466	\$ 5,363	\$ 5,655	\$ 71,781
Operating leases	3,078	2,909	2,541	2,326	2,269	8,867	21,990
Contractual interest on debt	8,922	8,760	5,697	958	766	45	25,148
							118,91
Total contractual obligations	\$ 12,252	\$ 14,589	\$ 63,363	\$ 5,750	\$ 8,398	\$ 14,567	\$ 9

Also, as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, we had contractual commitments with third parties in the aggregate amount of \$49.5 million \$13.5 million related to R&D programs, capital improvements, and procurement of BB satellite

components, certain R&D programs, and capital improvements. We expect these commitments will continue to increase as we complete the supply chain to assemble, integrate and electronics development in preparation test Block 2 BB satellites, and enter into launch agreements for the production and launch of the Block 2 BB satellites.

#### *Common Stock Purchase Agreement*

On May 6, 2022, we entered into the Common Stock Purchase Agreement (the "Common Stock Purchase Agreement" or "Equity Line of Credit") with B. Riley Principal Capital, LLC ("B. Riley"). Pursuant to the Common Stock Purchase Agreement, we have the right, in sell, at our sole discretion, to sell to B. Riley up to \$75.0 million of shares of our Class A common stock Common Stock at 97% of the volume weighted average price ("VWAP") of the Class A common stock Common Stock calculated in accordance with the Common Stock Purchase Agreement, over a period of 24 months subject to certain limitations and conditions contained in the Common Stock Purchase Agreement. Sales and timing of any sales of Class A common stock Common Stock are solely at our election, and we are under no obligation to sell any securities to B. Riley under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement. As consideration for B. Riley's commitment to purchase shares of the Company's Class A common stock, we have issued 43,938 shares of our Class A common stock as commitment shares and will issue up to an aggregate of 43,938 shares of our Class A common stock if certain conditions are met. Other than the issuance of the commitment shares of our Class A common stock to B. Riley, we issued 1,756,993 shares of our Class A common stock. We plan to raise capital, as and when needed, under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement as of December 31, 2022, aggregating to net proceeds of \$13.4 million under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement. at our sole discretion. Proceeds from the sale of our Class A common stock Common Stock under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement were and will continue to be used for general corporate purposes.

#### *Equity Distribution Agreement*

On September 8, 2022, we entered into an Equity Distribution Agreement (the "Sales Agreement" or "ATM Equity Program") with Evercore Group L.L.C. and B. Riley Securities, Inc. (collectively, the "agents") to sell shares of our Class A common stock Common Stock having an aggregate sales price of up to \$150.0 million through an "at the market offering" program under which the agents will act as sales agents. The agents are entitled to total compensation at a commission rate of up to 3.0% of the gross sales price per share sold. Under We plan to raise capital, as and when needed, under the Sales Agreement the Company issued 2,697,091 shares of its Class A common stock as of December 31,

42

---

2022 aggregating to proceeds of \$20.0 million, net of commissions paid to agents and transaction costs. at our sole discretion. Proceeds from the sale of our Class A common stock Common Stock under the Sales Agreement were and will continue to be used for general corporate purposes.

#### *Common Stock Offering*

On December 2, 2022, we completed a public offering of 13,636,364 shares of Class A common stock, raising proceeds of \$68.6 million, net of underwriting commissions of \$5.3 million and transaction costs of \$1.1 million. We provided a 30-day option to the underwriting agent to purchase up to an additional 2,045,454 shares to cover over-allotments, if any, which was not exercised. Proceeds from the sale of the Company's Class A common stock were and will continue to be used for general corporate purposes.

#### *Texas Financing Agreement Term loan*

In December 2021, concurrent with the purchase of real property and equipment in Midland, Texas, our wholly owned subsidiary, AST & Science Texas, LLC ("AST Texas"), entered into a new credit agreement with Lone Star State Bank of West Texas (the "Term Loan Credit Agreement") providing for a \$5.0 million term loan secured by the property. Borrowings under the term loan bear interest at a fixed rate equal to 4.20% per annum until December 7, 2026, and from December 8, 2026 until December 8, 2028 at a fixed rate per annum equal to 4.20% subject to plus adjustment if the index rate as defined in the Term Loan Credit Agreement is greater than 4.20%, subject to a maximum interest rate of 4.90% per annum. Refer to Note 10:8: Debt in the accompanying notes to the audited consolidated financial statements for further information.

In connection with the term loan, we deposited into a reserve account \$2.8 million of restricted cash which was used during 2022 to fund capital improvements related to the AIT facility located in Midland, Texas.

The Term Loan Credit Agreement contains certain customary events of default, and certain covenants that limit AST Texas' ability to, among other things, create liens on collateral, consolidate, merge, sell, or otherwise dispose of all or substantially all of its assets; and enter into certain transactions with its affiliates. If AST Texas fails to perform its obligations under these and other covenants, or should any event of default occur, the term loan may be terminated and any outstanding borrowings, together with unpaid accrued interest, could be declared immediately due and payable, and the lender will be authorized to take possession of the collateral.

Rakuten 49

---

#### *Senior secured credit facility*

On February 4, 2020 August 14, 2023, we entered into a commercial senior secured term loan credit agreement with Rakuten, ACP Post Oak Credit II LLC as administrative agent and collateral agent and Atlas Credit Partners, LLC ("Atlas") as lender, providing for our development principal loan commitment of exclusive network capabilities in Japan compatible with up to \$100.0 million (the "Atlas Credit Agreement"), of which \$48.5 million was borrowed upon closing. In addition, a two-year collateral protection insurance policy was issued to the mobile network lenders and a cash premium based on a single digit percentage of Rakuten the amount drawn was paid to the insurance provider thereunder (the "Cash Premium"). An additional amount of \$51.5 million may be borrowed only to the extent we raise additional capital

through equity raises and its affiliates, which agreement was amended and restated receive additional insurance coverage such that we have insurance coverage equal to at least the amount of borrowings under the credit facility.

The initial borrowings of \$48.5 million accrue interest at a fixed rate equal to three-month secured overnight financing rate ("SOFR") as of December 15, 2020 the closing date plus 9.625% per annum equal to 14.75% (the "Rakuten Agreement" "Atlas Fixed Rate"), payable on the last business day of each fiscal quarter. The borrowing amounts are payable at maturity on August 14, 2026 and are subject to mandatory prepayments upon the occurrence of certain specified events.

Borrowings are secured by substantially all of our assets other than the assets of certain excluded subsidiaries. The Atlas Credit Agreement contains customary affirmative and negative covenants, requires us to maintain certain levels of liquidity, limits our ability to incur additional indebtedness, make restricted payments (including cash dividends on common stock), and sell or otherwise dispose of our assets, among other restrictions.

Upon closing, we received net proceeds of \$37.2 million, net of debt issuance costs of \$9.5 million and deposit of \$1.8 million into an interest reserve escrow account. Debt issuance costs of \$9.5 million consist of agent fees, offering expenses, and two years of cash premium coverage. The net proceeds were and are expected to continue to be used for general corporate purposes as permitted under the Atlas Credit Agreement.

*The Rakuten Agreement includes key performance indicators ("KPIs") associated with the number of satellites launched, timing and coverage of our SpaceMobile Service in Japan in a phased manner that we must meet. If we do not meet the applicable KPIs for the last two phases noted in the Rakuten Agreement by June 2023, or if AST LLC becomes subject to any bankruptcy proceeding or becomes insolvent, we are required to pay Rakuten an amount of \$10.0 million. Payment of the amount can be made by issuing a promissory note bearing interest at 8.0% per annum and payable in 12 quarterly installments over a three-year term, which can be prepaid at our election. No payments have been made to date between us and Rakuten under the Rakuten Agreement. The term of the Rakuten Agreement shall remain in effect until we fulfill our obligations under the Rakuten Agreement. Capital equipment loan*

We do not expect to meet the applicable KPIs On August 14, 2023, we entered into a loan agreement with Lone Star State Bank of West Texas ("Lone Star") as lender, providing for \$15.0 million principal term loan commitment secured by June 2023. We certain real property fixtures and Rakuten are equipment in discussions in light one of our current business plan, planned deployment timeline, Texas facilities (the "Lone Star Loan Agreement").

Borrowings accrue interest at the Prime Rate plus 0.75%, subject to a ceiling rate. Interest payments are due and commercialization strategy. However, there can payable on a monthly basis. Interest payments began in September 2023 and principal payments will begin in April 2025. Principal repayments are thereafter due in 48 equal monthly installments until January 2029, the maturity date of the loan. In connection with the Lone Star Loan Agreement, we deposited a cash balance of \$15.0 million in the Lone Star Bank Money Market Fund. This cash balance will be no assurance that Rakuten converted to restricted cash if we fail to maintain a consolidated balance of cash and cash equivalents of at least \$75.0 million. This restricted cash will agree be used to amend or waive offset against the \$10.0 million payment that would term loan obligations if we fail to maintain a consolidated balance of cash and cash equivalents of at least \$50.0 million. In addition, the Lone Star Loan Agreement includes certain customary affirmative and negative covenants.

We drew the entire \$15.0 million facility on September 19, 2023 and incurred \$0.1 million of transaction costs. The net proceeds were and are expected to continue to be due used for not meeting general corporate purposes.

#### *Convertible Security Investment Agreement*

On January 16, 2024, we entered into a Convertible Security Investment Agreement (the "Investment Agreement") with AT&T Venture Investments, LLC ("AT&T"), Google LLC ("Google") and Vodafone Ventures Limited ("Vodafone", and together, the KPIs. If Rakuten does not agree to amend or waive this \$10.0 million payment, we expect "Investors") to issue a promissory note in the subordinated convertible notes for an aggregate principal amount of \$10.0 million \$110.0 million (such notes, the "Notes" and such investments, the "Investments") to the Investors. The Notes bear interest at a rate of 5.50% per year, payable semi-annually in June 2023. arrears beginning on June 30, 2024, in cash or in kind at our option. We intend to elect to pay the contractual interest amount in kind. The Notes have a ten-year term unless earlier converted. The net proceeds are expected to be used for general corporate purposes.

The holders of the Notes (the "Holders") may at their option convert the Notes (subject to certain exceptions) at any time on or after January 16, 2025 at an initial conversion rate of 173.9130 shares of Class A Common Stock per \$1,000 principal amount of Notes (equivalent to an initial conversion price of \$5.75 per share of Class A Common Stock). On or after January 16, 2025, we also have an option to require the Holders to convert the Notes (subject to certain exceptions) at the same initial conversion rate of 173.9130 shares of Class A Common Stock per \$1,000 principal amount of Notes if the VWAP of the Class A Common Stock has been at least 130% of the conversion price then in effect for 30 consecutive trading days, on the immediately succeeding

50

---

trading day after the last trading day of such 30 day period. The Notes may be accelerated upon the occurrence of certain events of default and fundamental change.

#### *January 2024 Common Stock Offering*

On January 23, 2024, we issued 32,258,064 shares of Class A Common Stock in a public offering and received proceeds of \$93.6 million, net of underwriting commissions of \$6.0 million and transaction costs of \$0.4 million. We provided a 30-day option to the underwriting agent to purchase up to an additional 4,838,709 shares of Class A Common Stock (the "Option Shares") from us on the same terms and conditions. On January 25, 2024, the Option Shares were exercised in full. The offering of the Option Shares closed on January 29, 2024 for proceeds of \$14.1 million, net of underwriting commissions of \$0.9 million. Proceeds from the sale of our Class A common stock under the January 2024 Common Stock Offering were and are expected to be used for general corporate purposes.

43

---

## **Cash Flows**

### ***Historical Cash Flows***

The following table summarizes our sources and uses of cash for the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 (in thousands):

	Year ended December 31,		Year ended December 31,		2022
	2022	2021	2023	2022	
Cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash	\$ 239,256	\$ 324,537	\$ 88,097	\$ 239,256	
Cash used in operating activities	\$ (156,464)	\$ (80,095)	\$ (148,942)	\$ (156,464)	
Cash used in investing activities	(31,352)	(54,792)	(118,807)	(31,352)	
Cash provided by financing activities	102,340	416,941	116,732	102,340	

#### *Operating activities*

Cash used in operating activities was \$156.5 million \$148.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, including \$14.8 million of deposits paid to a launch provider related to the launch of five Block 1 BB satellites, as compared to cash used in operating activities of \$80.1 million \$156.5 million for the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022. The \$61.6 million increase \$7.5 million decrease in cash used in operating activities excluding the above mentioned deposits paid to the launch provider, was attributable to higher operating expenses as a result decrease of \$38.1 million in working capital offset by an increase of \$30.6 million in headcount, research and development efforts, software license costs, professional services fees and other office related expenses and an increase in advances paid to vendors for development and procurement of long-lead components for our BB satellites support expanded operations during the year ended December 31, 2023.

#### *Investing activities*

Cash used in investing activities was \$31.4 million \$118.8 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, as compared to cash used in investing activities of \$54.8 million \$31.4 million for the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022. The \$23.4 million decrease \$87.5 million increase in cash used in investing activities was primarily attributable to proceeds, net of transaction costs and cash balance of Nano deconsolidated as of the date of sale, of \$25.9 million received from the Nano Share Sale and a \$12.7 million decrease in BW3 test satellite assembly and testing costs offset by \$15.2 million \$61.5 million increase in purchases of property and equipment, including construction procurement of BB satellite materials and advance launch payments, and \$26.0 million proceeds from sale of Nano, net of cash deconsolidated and transaction costs, incurred at our Texas and Israel facilities in September 2022.

#### *Financing activities*

Cash provided by financing activities was \$102.3 million \$116.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, as compared to cash provided by financing activities of \$416.9 million \$102.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022. Cash The \$14.4 million increase in cash provided by financing activities for the year ended December 31, 2021 was attributable to the proceeds from the Business Combination. Cash provided by financing activities for the year ended December 31, 2022 was primarily attributable to \$53.4 million of net proceeds from

borrowings on the Atlas Credit Agreement and Lone Star Loan Agreement, partially offset by \$39.0 million decrease in net proceeds from the sale of shares of Class A common stock Common Stock under the Equity Line of Credit, secondary public offerings, ATM Equity Program and Common Stock Offering. Equity Line of Credit.

### ***Impact of inflation***

While inflation may impact our capital and operating expenditures, we believe the effects of inflation, if any, on our historical results of operations and financial condition have not been significant. However, there can be no assurance that our results of operations capital cost estimates, and financial condition will not be materially impacted by inflation in the current future, including by heightened levels of inflation. inflation experienced globally as a consequence of the rapidly changing market and economic conditions.

51

---

### ***Funding Requirements***

We believe our existing cash and cash equivalents as of December 31, 2023, funds raised in January 2024 and access to the Equity Line of Credit and ATM Equity Program will be sufficient to meet anticipated cash requirements for the next 12 months from the date hereof. However, our forecast of the period of time through which our financial resources will be adequate to support operations is a forward-looking statement that involves risks and uncertainties, and actual results could vary materially. We have based this estimate on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we could expend capital resources sooner than we expect.

Future capital requirements will depend on many factors, including:

- Establishing and maintaining supply and manufacturing relationships with third parties that can provide adequate both amount and quality, products and services to support our satellite development;
- Technological or manufacturing and assembling difficulties, design issues or other unforeseen matters;

44

---

- Negotiation of launch agreements (including launch costs), launch delays or failures, deployment failures, or in-satellite failures;
- Seeking and obtaining necessary regulatory approvals;
- Timing of the launch of our satellites and subsequent initiation of service in various markets, delays in which result in increased operating expenses;
- Addressing any competing technological and market developments;

- Seeking Ability to adjust our expenditures and obtaining market access approvals; contractual commitments based on capital availability;
- Ability to operate under the covenants in our debt agreements; and
- Attracting, hiring, and retaining qualified personnel.

Until such time, if ever, as we can generate substantial revenues to support our cost structure, we expect to finance cash needs through a combination of equity offerings, debt financings, commercial and other similar arrangements. To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, the ownership interest of stockholders will be, or could be, diluted, and the terms of these securities may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect the rights of common stockholders. Debt financing and equity financing, if available, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions, such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends. If we raise funds through commercial agreements, or other similar arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies and/or future revenue streams, or grant licenses on terms that may not be favorable to us and/or may reduce the value of our Class A common stock. Also, our ability to raise necessary financing could be impacted by the COVID-19 pandemic, recent geopolitical events, higher interest rates and inflationary economic conditions and their effects on the market conditions. If we are unable to raise additional funds through equity or offerings, debt financings or commercial arrangements when needed, we may be required to delay, limit, reduce or terminate our development and commercialization efforts or grant rights to develop and market other services even if we would otherwise prefer to develop and market these services ourselves, or potentially discontinue operations.

## Critical Accounting Policies

Our audited consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (U.S. GAAP). Preparation of the financial statements requires our management to make judgments, estimates and assumptions that impact the reported amount of revenue and expenses, assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities. We consider an accounting judgment, estimate or assumption to be critical when (1) the estimate or assumption is complex in nature or requires a high degree of judgment and (2) the use of different judgments, estimates and assumptions could have a material impact on our audited consolidated financial statements. Our significant accounting policies are described in Note 2: Summary of Significant Accounting Policies of the audited consolidated financial statements included elsewhere in this Report. Our critical accounting policies are described below.

### BlueWalker 3 Capitalization Property and Equipment

We account design and self-construct the BB satellites intended to be used to provide SpaceMobile Service to customers. The BB satellites are not intended to be held for research sale in the ordinary course of business. The costs incurred to complete the design is expensed as incurred. The cost incurred to complete the construction is capitalized as property and development equipment. The cost of self-constructed BB satellite assets consists of direct materials, direct labor, launch costs related and other direct costs attributable to bringing the BW3 asset to a working condition and desired location for the intended use. Costs incurred, including direct materials purchased and launch

---

payments made, until the completion of the construction and launch of the BB satellites, are reported as satellite materials, satellites under construction, and advance launch payments within construction-in-progress. Once launched in orbit, the costs of the BB satellites are reported as satellites in orbit and depreciation of the satellites commences once the BB satellites are ready for their intended use.

We capitalize the costs of the test satellite in accordance with ASC 730 – *Research and Development* (“ASC 730”). We have determined satellites if there is an alternative future use for the BW3 test satellite as defined in this guidance. As such, certain costs related to the assembly of the BW3 test satellite are capitalized and reported as construction-in-progress (“CIP”) on our audited Consolidated Balance Sheets. satellites. We capitalize only those expenditures and ancillary costs that are directly attributable to assembly and testing and necessarily incurred to place the BW3 test satellite into its their intended location and use. To date, capitalized expenditures These costs include the materials costs, for satellite parts, launch cost, and other non-recurring costs directly associated with the BW3 development of the test satellite developments. satellites. The other non-recurring costs primarily include third-party engineers vendors who are hired solely for the design, assembly, and testing of the BW3 test satellite and are responsible for the value and progression of the project. The costs for internal, recurrent engineers engineering employees and consultants are expensed as engineering services costs and not capitalized to the CIP account on our audited Consolidated Balance Sheets, cost of the test satellites, as these employees are not directly associated with the development of the BW3 test satellite. We expect the BW3 test satellite to be ready for its intended use after establishing the technical feasibility of satellite to Cellular Broadband connection, at which point we will start depreciating the BW3 test satellite over its estimated useful life of two years. satellites.

#### *Warrant Liabilities*

We account for warrants as either equity-classified or liability-classified instruments based on an assessment of the warrant’s specific terms and applicable authoritative guidance in ASC 480, *- Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity* (“ASC 480”) and ASC 815, *- Derivatives and Hedging* (“ASC 815”). Our assessment considers whether the warrants are freestanding financial instruments pursuant to ASC 480, whether they meet the definition of a liability pursuant to ASC 480, and whether the warrants meet all of the requirements for equity classification under ASC 815, including whether the warrants are indexed to our own common stock and whether the warrant holders could potentially require “net cash settlement” in a circumstance outside of our

---

control, among other conditions for equity classification. This assessment, which requires the use of professional judgment, is conducted at the time of warrant issuance and as of each subsequent quarterly period-end date while the warrants are outstanding.

For issued or modified warrants that meet all of the criteria for equity classification, they are recorded as a component of additional paid-in capital at the time of issuance. Issued or modified warrants that do not meet all the criteria for equity classification are recorded at their initial fair value on the date of issuance and subject to remeasurement each balance sheet date with changes in the estimated fair value of the warrants to be recognized as an unrealized gain or loss in the audited Consolidated Statements consolidated statements of Operations. operations.

#### *Goodwill and Long-Lived Assets*

Our goodwill balance was eliminated following the deconsolidation of Nano from our audited consolidated financial statements on September 6, 2022.

Prior to the deconsolidation, we assessed goodwill for impairment at least annually in the fourth quarter, on a reporting unit basis, or more frequently, when events and circumstances occur indicating that the recorded goodwill may be impaired. We first performed a qualitative assessment Impairment of goodwill, a Step 0 analysis, to determine whether it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount. The qualitative impairment analysis consisted of evaluating macroeconomic conditions, industry and market considerations, cost factors, overall financial performance, relevant entity-specific events, events affecting a specific reporting unit, and sustained decrease in the share price. If we determined that it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying value we performed a quantitative impairment test. This test identifies both the existence of and the amount of goodwill impairment by comparing the fair value of a reporting unit to its carrying amount, including goodwill. If the fair value of a reporting unit exceeds its carrying amount goodwill is not impaired. If the carrying amount of a reporting unit exceeded its fair value an impairment loss is recognized in amount equal to that excess, limited to the amount of goodwill allocated to that reporting unit. When performing a quantitative impairment test we made various estimates and assumptions in determining the estimated fair value of the reporting unit, including estimated cash flows and a terminal value, discounted at a rate of return that reflects the relative risk of the cash flows, as well as valuation multiples derived from comparable publicly traded companies that are applied to operating performance of the reporting unit. Long-Lived Assets

We assess the impairment of long-lived assets whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying value may not be recoverable. Factors we consider important in the determination of an impairment include significant underperformance relative to historical or projected future operating results, significant changes in the manner that we use the acquired asset and significant negative industry or economic trends.

#### **Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

We did not have any off-balance sheet arrangements as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023.

#### **Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk**

We are a smaller reporting company as defined by 12b-2 of the Exchange Act and are not required to provide the information otherwise required under this Item.

#### **Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data**

The full text of the Company's financial statements for the fiscal years ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023** and **2021**, begins on page **51** **78** of this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

#### **Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements With Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure**

None.

**46** **53**

---

#### **Item 9A. Controls and Procedures**

##### ***Disclosure Controls and Procedures***

Disclosure controls and procedures are controls and procedures that are designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by us in reports that we file or furnish under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the SEC's rules and forms. We periodically review the design and effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures worldwide, including compliance with various laws and regulations that apply to our operations. We make modifications to improve the design and effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures, and may take other corrective action, if our reviews identify a need for such modifications or actions. In designing and evaluating the disclosure controls and procedures, we recognize that any controls and procedures, no matter how well designed and operated, can provide only reasonable assurance of achieving the desired control objectives.

We have carried out an evaluation, under the supervision and with the participation of our management, including our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer, of the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Exchange Act), as of the year ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**. Based upon that evaluation, our principal executive officer and our principal financial officer concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**.

##### ***Management's Annual Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting***

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting, as such term is defined in Exchange Act Rule 13a-15(f). Under the supervision and with the participation of our management, including our principal executive officer and principal financial officer, we conducted an evaluation of the

effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting based on the framework set forth in *Internal Control-Integrated Framework* issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (2013 framework). Based on our evaluation, management has concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023.

This Annual Report on Form 10-K does not include an attestation report of our independent registered public accounting firm due to the rules established by the SEC as we are a smaller reporting company.

#### ***Changes in Internal Control over Financial Reporting***

There have not been any changes in our internal control over financial reporting (as such term is defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) under the Exchange Act) during our most recent fiscal quarter ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 to which this report relates that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

#### **Item 9B. Other Information**

Not applicable. (b) In the quarter ended December 31, 2023, none of our directors or officers (as defined in Rule 16a-1(f) of the Exchange Act) adopted or terminated a plan for the purchase or sale of our securities intended to satisfy the affirmative defense conditions of Rule 10b5-1(c) or a non-Rule 10b5-1 trading arrangement for the purchase or sale of our securities, within the meaning of Item 408 of Regulation S-K.

#### **Item 9C. Disclosure Regarding Foreign Jurisdictions that Prevent Inspections**

Not applicable.

---

### **Part III**

#### **Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance**

Except Set forth below are the names, ages and positions of each of the individuals who serve as provided our executive officers and directors as of April 1, 2024.

<b>Name</b>	<b>Age</b>	<b>Position</b>
<b>Executive Officers</b>		
Abel Avellan	53	Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer

Sean Wallace	62	Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer
Brian Heller	56	Executive Vice President, General Counsel and Secretary
Shanti Gupta	47	Senior Vice President, Chief Accounting Officer

#### **Non-Employee Directors**

Adriana Cisneros <sup>(2)(3)</sup>	44	Director
Alexander Coleman <sup>(1)(2)(4)</sup>	57	Director
Luke Ibbetson	55	Director
Edward Knapp	63	Director
Hiroshi Mikitani	59	Director
Ronald Rubin <sup>(1)</sup>	58	Director
Richard Sarnoff <sup>(3)</sup>	65	Director
Julio A. Torres <sup>(1)(2)(3)</sup>	57	Director

- (1) Member of the audit committee
- (2) Member of the compensation committee
- (3) Member of the nominating and corporate governance committee
- (4) Member of the redemption election committee

#### **Executive Officers**

**Abel Avellan.** Mr. Avellan is the Founder, Chairman, and Chief Executive Officer of AST LLC since its inception in Item 1 under "Information about 2017 and has served as the Company's Chairman of the Board of Directors and Chief Executive Officers" Officer since April 2021. Prior to founding the Company, Mr. Avellan served as the founder and Chief Executive Officer of Emerging Markets Communications ("EMC"), a satellite-based communications services provider to maritime and other mobility markets, from 2000 until its sale to Global Eagle Entertainment Inc. for \$550.0 million in July 2016. Following the information required acquisition of EMC, Mr. Avellan worked as the President and Chief Strategy Officer for Global Eagle Entertainment Inc. until April 2017. Mr. Avellan has over 25 years of success in the space industry and is the co-inventor of 21 U.S. patents. He was the recipient of the Satellite Transaction of the Year award by this item shall be included Euroconsult in 2015, was named Satellite Teleport Executive of the Year in 2017 and in February 2024 was named a Commissioner to the ITU/UNESCO Broadband Commission for Sustainable Development. Mr. Avellan has a Bachelor's in Electrical Engineering from Simón Bolívar University. We believe Mr. Avellan is qualified to serve on our Board of Directors due to his expertise and years of success developing innovative space-based technologies and continually proven engineering and management acumen.

**Sean Wallace.** Mr. Wallace serves as the Company's Executive Vice President, Chief Financial Officer since May 2022. Mr. Wallace is an amendment experienced business leader with over 35 years of finance, banking and management experience. Prior to this appointment, Mr. Wallace served since May 2020 as the Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer of Cogent Communications, Inc., a publicly traded company that is one of the world's largest commercial internet service providers. Prior to joining Cogent, Mr. Wallace was an investor and operator of industrial real estate projects from 2015 to 2020. He has also held senior management and banking positions at Standard Chartered, where he was the Global Head of their origination and coverage business, and at JP Morgan, where he was their Co-Head of Investment Banking, Asia Pacific and the leader of their North American Telecom Banking operations. Mr. Wallace's experience as a banker has provided him with expertise in a broad set of financing products, including debt, equity and project finance, executed

primarily for telecommunications companies. Mr. Wallace received an AB from Harvard College and an MBA from Harvard Business School.

**Brian Heller.** Mr. Heller serves as the Company's Executive Vice President, General Counsel and Secretary since February 2021. Mr. Heller has over 20 years of public company experience. Prior to joining the Company, he served as General Counsel of Castle Brands Inc., a publicly-traded spirits company, from October 2008 until its sale to Pernod Ricard in October 2019, and as Senior Vice President - Business and Legal Affairs of Ladenburg Thalmann Financial Services, a publicly-traded financial services company, from April 2007 until its sale to a portfolio company of Reverence Capital Partners in May 2020. He joined Ladenburg from AOL Latin America, where he served as Associate General Counsel. Previously, Mr. Heller was a Partner in the Corporate and Intellectual Property Departments at the Steel Hector & Davis law firm (now Squire Patton Boggs) in Miami, Florida. Earlier in his career, he served as a law clerk to the Honorable James Lawrence King of the United States District Court for the Southern District of Florida. Mr. Heller received his J.D., cum laude, from Georgetown University Law Center, where he was Articles Editor of the Georgetown Law Journal, and his Bachelor of Science degree from Northwestern University. He is admitted to practice law in New York and Florida.

**Shanti Gupta.** Mr. Gupta serves as the Company's Senior Vice President, Chief Accounting Officer since September 2021 and is responsible for the Company's financial operations, corporate accounting, external reporting, and financial planning and analytics. He brings more than 20 years of global finance and accounting experience to his role on the Company's leadership team. Before joining AST, he worked with Ernst & Young LLP in New York from 2014, where he was a Partner in the Financial Accounting Advisory Services. Previously, he has worked with Deloitte & Touche LLP in New York and KPMG in India. He earned his Bachelor of Commerce (Honors) from Shri Ram College of Commerce, Delhi University, India, and is a licensed Certified Public Accountant. He is also a Chartered Accountant from The Institute of Chartered Accountants of India.

The following individuals also serve as members of our senior management team:

**Scott Wisniewski.** Mr. Wisniewski, age 42, serves as the Company's Executive Vice President, Chief Strategy Officer since March 2021 and oversees corporate development, treasury, commercial, regulatory, investor relations and public relations. Prior to joining the Company, he was Managing Director of Technology, Media & Telecommunications Investment Banking at Barclays, advising clients on raising capital and mergers and acquisitions for over a decade. While at Barclays, he advised us on the 2021 business combination transaction, which raised \$462.0 million in gross proceeds, and the 2019 strategic investment transaction, which raised \$110.0 million of gross proceeds. Earlier in his career he was a management consultant focused on supplier development and a mechanical design engineer. Mr. Wisniewski received a Bachelor of Engineering degree from Dartmouth College and a Master's in Business Administration from The University of Chicago Booth School of Business.

**Dr. Huiwen Yao.** Dr. Yao, age 61, serves as the Company's Executive Vice President, Chief Technology Officer since 2018. Dr. Yao has over 30 years of successful experience in engineering team building and management, system architecture, research and technology development and program execution in communications satellites. Prior to joining the Company, he was the Senior Director of Commercial Payload/RF Engineering in the Space Systems Group of Northrop Grumman Innovation Systems (previously Orbital ATK). He was a major contributor to the success of the commercial satellite business of Orbital/Orbital ATK with more than 40 GEO communications satellites delivered. Dr. Yao is the author of more than 55 technical papers and a book chapter in the fields of communications systems, antennas, microwave/RF components and EM simulations/CAD. He has been granted 21 U.S. and international patents. He received his B.S. and M.S. degrees in Electrical Engineering from Beijing Institute of Technology and a Ph.D. in Electronic Physics from the University of Maryland.

#### **Directors**

The biography of Mr. Avellan is set forth above under the header "Executive Officers". The biographies of our non-employee directors are set forth below:

**Adriana Cisneros.** Ms. Cisneros serves as a member of our Board of Directors since April 2021. Since September 2013, Ms. Cisneros has served as the Chief Executive Officer of Cisneros, a global enterprise focused on media & entertainment, digital advertising solutions, real estate, and social leadership, and she served as its Vice Chairman and Director of Strategy from September 2005 to August 2013. Since 2018, she has served on the board of directors of Mattel Inc. and also serves on numerous non-profit boards. Ms. Cisneros holds a B.A. in journalism from Columbia University, a M.A. in Journalism from New York University and a degree in leadership development from Harvard University Business School. We believe Ms. Cisneros is qualified to serve on our Board of Directors based on her significant leadership experience in media, real estate, entertainment and digital and consumer products.

**Alexander Coleman.** Mr. Coleman serves as a member of our Board of Directors since April 2021. Mr. Coleman is currently the Chairman of New Providence Acquisition Corp. II and a Managing Partner of New Providence Management LLC, largely focused investing in public and private consumer related companies. He previously served as Chairman of our predecessor, New Providence Acquisition Corp.'s ("NPA") board from September 2019 until the closing of the Business Combination in April 2021 (refer to our 2022 Annual Report on Form 10-K ~~filed~~ for definition of "Business Combination"). Mr. Coleman has a broad range of private equity experience, including but not limited to, as the founder and Managing Partner of Annex Capital Management LLC, a co-Head and Managing Partner of Citicorp Venture Capital, Citicorp's New York based leveraged buyout fund and a Managing Investment Partner and co-Head of Dresdner Kleinwort Capital LLC, Dresdner Bank's North American merchant banking group. These positions required Mr. Coleman to oversee private equity platforms involving control and minority equity investing, mezzanine, distressed senior debt and fund-of-funds. Mr. Coleman was also a Managing Partner of Sea Hunter, a specialized fund focused on the evolving global cannabis market and a predecessor to Tilt Holdings, where he also acted as CEO and board member. Mr. Coleman has

served as a director and chairman of the board for numerous private and public companies as well as not-for-profits. Mr. Coleman received an MBA from the University of Cambridge and a BA in ~~Economics~~ from the University of Vermont. We believe Mr. Coleman is qualified to serve on our Board of Directors based on his experience leading companies across many industries.

**Luke Ibbetson.** Mr. Ibbetson serves as a member of our Board of Directors since April 2021. Mr. Ibbetson has worked with ~~General Instructions G(3)~~ Vodafone Ventures Limited, a private limited company incorporated under the Laws of England and Wales ("Vodafone") since 1996 and has led the Vodafone Group Research and Development Organization since 2013, which is responsible for all aspects of future research, including trials of emerging technologies. Mr. Ibbetson serves on the board of several industry groups and initiatives, including the 5G Automotive Alliance, and serves as Chairman of the Next Generation Mobile Networks Alliance Board Strategy committee. Mr. Ibbetson holds a B.Sc. in electronic engineering and a M.Sc. in telecommunications from the University of Leeds. We believe Mr. Ibbetson is qualified to serve on our Board of Directors based on his years of experience and commitment to innovative thinking in the telecommunications industry.

**Edward Knapp.** Mr. Knapp serves as a member of our Board of Directors since April 2021. Mr. Knapp currently serves as the corporate Chief Technology Officer for American Tower Corporation. Prior to joining American Tower in 2017, Mr. Knapp served as Senior Vice President of Engineering at Qualcomm, where he was responsible for Qualcomm's New Jersey Corporate Research Center, from which he managed a global engineering team of researchers and product engineering staff. He currently serves on the board of directors of the Center for Automotive Research. Mr. Knapp holds a B.E. in electrical engineering from Stony Brook University, an M.S. in electrical engineering from Polytechnic University ("NYU") in New York, and an M.B.A. from Columbia University. We believe Mr. Knapp is qualified to serve on our Board of Directors based on his more than 40 years of communications technology experience and over thirty years of experience in the development of the global wireless industry.

**Hiroshi Mikitani.** Mr. Mikitani has served as a member of our Board of Directors since 2021. Mr. Mikitani is the founder, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of Rakuten Group, Inc. Founded in Japan in 1997 with the mission to contribute to society by creating value through innovation and entrepreneurship, Rakuten Group, Inc. is one of the world's leading internet service companies. Mr. Mikitani also serves as Vice Chairman and co-Chief Executive Officer of Rakuten Medical, Inc., a global biotechnology company developing precision, cell-targeting investigational therapies on its Alluminox™ platform. Mr. Mikitani has previously served as a member of the Lyft, Inc. board of directors and currently serves on the boards of directors of a number of privately held companies. In 2011, he was appointed Chairman of the Tokyo Philharmonic Orchestra. He also serves as Representative Director of the Japan Association of New Economy (JANE). Mr. Mikitani holds a commerce degree from Hitotsubashi University and an M.B.A. from Harvard Business School. We believe Mr. Mikitani is qualified to serve on our Board of Directors based on his extensive operating and management experience with major technology companies.

**Ronald Rubin.** Mr. Rubin serves as a member of our Board of Directors since April 2021. Mr. Rubin is the Co-Founder and Managing Director of Tower Alliance, LLC, a leading provider of outsourced services to wireless infrastructure owners. Mr. Rubin served as Chief Financial Officer of Global Tower Partners from 2010 to 2013. Mr. Rubin holds a B.S. in Accounting from American University, a M.S. in Taxation from Florida International University and is a Certified Public Accountant. Based on Mr. Rubin's years of experience in the telecommunications industry, we believe he is qualified to serve on our Board of Directors and be part of our Audit Committee.

**Richard Sarnoff.** Mr. Sarnoff serves as a member of our Board of Directors since April 2021. Mr. Sarnoff is Partner at Kohlberg Kravis Roberts & Company and leads its media, entertainment and education investing activities for the United States private equity. From 2014 through 2017, Mr. Sarnoff served as Managing Director and Head of the Media and Communications industry group of Kohlberg Kravis Roberts & Company, leading investments in the Media, Telecom, Digital Media and Education sectors in the United States. Mr. Sarnoff currently serves on the board of directors of Chegg, Inc. and of several private companies, as well as several not-for-profit organizations. Mr. Sarnoff holds a B.A. in Art and Archeology from Princeton University and an M.B.A. from Harvard Business School. We believe Mr. Sarnoff is qualified to serve on our Board of Directors based on his extensive experience serving in senior leadership roles, and on the boards of directors of media and digital technology companies.

**Julio A. Torres.** Mr. Torres serves as a member of our Board of Directors since April 2021. Mr. Torres has served as the managing partner at Multiple Equilibria Capital, a financial advisory firm since March 2013. Mr. Torres has served as the Chief Executive Officer and member of the board of directors of Andina Acquisition Corp. III since January 2019. From August 2015 to March 2018, Mr. Torres served as Chief Executive Officer and a member of the board of directors of Andina Acquisition Corp. II, a blank check company that consummated an initial business combination with Lazy Days' R.V. Center, Inc. From October 2011 through January 2013, Mr. Torres served as Co-Chief Executive Officer of Andina Acquisition Corp. He also served as a member of the board of Andina 1 from October 2011 until its merger in December 2013 with Tecnoglass Inc. and has continued to serve on the board of Tecnoglass Inc. since such time. Mr. Torres also serves on the board of several international public companies. Mr. Torres graduated from the Universidad de los Andes and received an M.B.A. from the Kellogg Graduate School of Management at Northwestern University and a master in public administration from the J.F. Kennedy School of Government at Harvard University. We believe Mr. Torres is qualified to serve on our Board of Directors based on his extensive operational and company governance experience.

#### **Delinquent Section 16(a) Reports**

Section 16(a) of the Exchange Act requires our directors and executive officers and persons who own more than 10% of a registered class of our equity securities, to file reports of ownership on Form 3 and changes in ownership on Form 4 or 5 with the SEC and Nasdaq. Such executive officers, directors and stockholders also are required by SEC rules to furnish us with copies of all Section 16(a) forms that they file. Based on a review of the copies of such reports furnished to us and written representations from our directors and executive officers that no other reports were required, we believe that our directors, executive officers and 10% stockholders complied with all Section 16(a) filing requirements applicable to them for the year ended December 31, 2023.

#### **Stockholders' Agreement Director Appointment Rights**

Pursuant to the Stockholders' Agreement, among other things, the AST Equityholders agreed to vote all securities of the Company that may be voted in the election of our directors held by such AST Equityholders in accordance with the

provisions of the Stockholders' Agreement, and the Stockholder Parties agree to take all necessary action to cause Avellan to be the chairperson of our Board until the Sunset Date.

Our equityholders may nominate directors as follows: (a) Avellan may nominate seven members of our Board of Directors, which amount includes three vacancies for which Avellan has the right, pursuant to the Stockholders' Agreement, to designate directors for appointment to such vacancies at any time; (b) Invesat, Vodafone and American Tower, each may nominate one member of our Board of Directors; and (c) Rakuten USA may nominate two members of our Board of Directors, which currently includes one vacancy. The registrant has adopted a code of ethics. AST Equityholders agree to vote for each of the foregoing nominees.

Avellan's right to nominate directors will decrease in proportion to the ownership interests of Avellan and his permitted transferees in the Company's aggregate outstanding voting power, such that if Avellan and his permitted transferees: (i) own less than 50% of the Company's aggregate outstanding voting power of the Company, Avellan and his permitted transferees may only nominate five members of our Board of Directors; (ii) own less than 40% of the aggregate outstanding voting power of the Company, Avellan and his permitted transferees may only nominate three members of our Board of Directors; (iii) own less than 30% of the aggregate outstanding voting power of the Company, Avellan and his permitted transferees may only nominate two members of our Board of Directors; (iv) own less than 20% of the aggregate outstanding voting power of the Company, Avellan and his permitted transferees may only nominate one member of our Board of Directors; and (v) own less than 5% of the aggregate outstanding voting power of the Company, Avellan and his permitted transferees will no longer be entitled to nominate any members of our Board of Directors. If the size of our Board of Directors is increased or decreased, the number of members that Avellan may designate will increase or decrease proportionately to the size of our Board of Directors.

---

Invesat's nomination right will terminate if it (together with its permitted transferees) ceases to hold at least 5% of the outstanding Class A Common Stock of the Company (assuming exchange of AST LLC Common Units for shares of Class A Common Stock). Vodafone's nomination right will terminate if it (together with its permitted transferees) ceases to beneficially own either (a) at least 5% of the outstanding Class A Common Stock of the Company or (b) at least 50% of the Class A Common Stock held by it immediately after the completion of the Closing (assuming exchange of all AST LLC Common Units for shares of Class A Common Stock). Sponsor's nomination right terminated at the second annual meeting of the stockholders of the Company following the Closing. American Tower's nomination right will terminate if it (together with its permitted transferees) ceases to hold at least 50% of the Class A Common Stock held by it immediately after the Closing (assuming exchange of all AST LLC Common Units for shares of Class A Common Stock). Rakuten USA's nomination right with respect to its first designee will terminate if it (together with its permitted transferees) ceases to hold either (i) at least 5% of the outstanding Class A Common Stock of the Company or (ii) at least 50% of the Class A Common Stock held by it immediately after the Closing (assuming exchange of all AST LLC Common Units for shares of Class A Common Stock), and Rakuten USA's nomination right with respect to its second designee will terminate if it

(together with its permitted transferees) ceases to hold at least 10% of the outstanding Class A Common Stock of the Company (assuming exchange of all AST LLC Common Units for shares of Class A Common Stock).

### **Code of Business Conduct and Ethics**

We have a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics (the "Code of Ethics") that, along with our Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation (the "Charter"), our Amended and Restated Bylaws ("Bylaws"), the charters of the committees of the Board (the "Committees"), our Corporate Governance Guidelines and the Stockholders' Agreement, provide the framework of our governance. Our Code of Ethics applies to all of our executive officers, directors and employees, including our principal executive officer, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer or persons performing similar functions. We intend to make any legally required disclosures regarding amendments to, or waivers of, provisions of our Code of Ethics on our website rather than by filing a Current Report on Form 8-K. Our Code of Ethics and Corporate Governance Guidelines are available on the registrant's "Corporate Governance Overview" section of our investor relations website at <https://investors.ast-science.com>. The information on any of our websites is deemed not to be incorporated in this report.

### **Board Committees and Corporate Governance**

Our Board of Directors has established four standing committees: an Audit Committee, a Compensation Committee, a Nominating and Governance Committee, and a Redemption Election Committee, each of which operates under a charter that has been approved by the Board of Directors. The charters for each Committee are available in the "Corporate Governance Overview" section of our investor relations website at <https://investors.ast-science.com>. The information on any of our websites is deemed not to be incorporated in this report.

#### **Audit Committee**

Our audit committee is responsible for, among other things:

- appointing, compensating, retaining, evaluating, terminating and overseeing our independent registered public accounting firm;
- discussing with our independent registered public accounting firm their independence from management;
- reviewing, with our independent registered public accounting firm, the scope and results of their audit;
- approving all audit and permissible non-audit services to be performed by our independent registered public accounting firm;
- overseeing the financial reporting process and discussing with management and our independent registered public accounting firm the quarterly and annual financial statements that we file with the SEC;
- overseeing our financial and accounting controls and compliance with legal and regulatory requirements;
- reviewing our policies on risk assessment and risk management;
- reviewing related person transactions; and
- establishing procedures for the confidential anonymous submission of concerns regarding question accounting, internal controls or auditing matters.

Our audit committee consists of Messrs. Torres, Coleman and Rubin, with Mr. Torres serving as chair. Our Board of Directors have affirmatively determined that each member of the audit committee qualifies as independent under Nasdaq rules applicable to board members generally and under Nasdaq rules and Exchange Act Rule 10A-3 specific to audit committee members. All members of our audit committee meet the requirements for financial literacy under the applicable Nasdaq rules. In addition, each of Messrs. Rubin and Torres qualifies as an "audit committee financial expert," as such term is defined in Item 407(d)(5) of Regulation S-K.

### **Compensation Committee**

Our compensation committee is responsible for, among other things:

- reviewing and approving the corporate goals and objectives, evaluating the performance of and reviewing approving, (either alone or, if directed by our Board of Directors, in conjunction with a majority of the independent members of our Board of Directors) the compensation of our Chief Executive Officer, and the Chief Executive Officer may not be present during voting or deliberations of his compensation;
- overseeing an evaluation of the performance of and reviewing and setting or making recommendations to our Board of Directors regarding the compensation of our other executive officers;
- reviewing and approving or making recommendations to our Board of Directors regarding our incentive compensation and equity-based plans, policies and programs;
- reviewing and approving all employment agreement and severance arrangements for our executive officers;
- making recommendations to our Board of Directors regarding the compensation of our directors;
- retaining and overseeing any compensation consultants.

Our compensation committee consists of Ms. Cisneros and Messrs. Coleman and Torres, with Mr. Coleman serving as chair. Our Board of Directors has affirmatively determined that each of Ms. Cisneros and Messrs. Coleman and Torres qualifies as independent under Nasdaq rules and is a "non-employee director" as defined in Rule 16b-3 of the Exchange Act.

None of our executive officers has, during the last year, participated in deliberations of our Board of Directors concerning executive officer compensation. None of our executive officers currently serves, or has served during the last year, as a member of the board of directors or compensation committee of any entity that has one or more executive officers serving as a member of our Board of Directors.

### **Nominating and Governance Committee**

Our nominating and corporate governance committee is responsible for, among other things:

- identifying individuals qualified to become members of our Board of Directors, consistent with criteria approved by our Board of Directors;
- overseeing succession planning for our Chief Executive Officer and other employees. The additional information required executive officers;
- periodically reviewing our Board of Directors' leadership structure and recommending any proposed changes to our Board of Directors;
- overseeing an annual evaluation of the effectiveness of our Board of Directors and its committees; and
- developing and recommending to our Board of Directors a set of corporate governance guidelines.

Our nominating and corporate governance committee consists of Ms. Cisneros and Messrs. Sarnoff and Torres, with Mr. Sarnoff serving as the chair. Our Board of Directors has affirmatively determined that each of Ms. Cisneros, Mr. Sarnoff and Mr. Torres qualifies as independent under Nasdaq rules.

#### **Redemption Election Committee**

Our redemption election committee is responsible for determining whether, in connection with the redemption of AST LLC's Common Units by Item 406a holder thereof, we, in our capacity as managing member of Regulation S-K is provided in this report AST LLC, should elect to redeem such Common Units for cash or shares of Class A Common Stock. Our redemption election committee must be comprised solely of directors who were not nominated under the heading "General" under Part I, Item 1. Business. Stockholders' Agreement or other contractual right by, and are not otherwise affiliated with.

60

---

any holder of Class B Common Stock or Class C Common Stock, and currently consists of Mr. Coleman. Under the Stockholders' Agreement, the Stockholder Parties have agreed that, until such date as the Stockholder Parties collectively control less than 50% of the total voting power of the Company, (i) the Stockholder Parties will take all necessary action to cause the Company and our Board of Directors to maintain the Redemption Election Committee of our Board of Directors and its delegated powers and (ii) the provisions of the Stockholders' Agreement relating to the Redemption Election Committee cannot be amended without the express approval of the Redemption Election Committee.

#### **Item 11. Executive Compensation**

Our executive compensation program is designed to attract, motivate and retain high quality leadership and incentivize our executive officers to achieve performance goals over the short- and long-term, which also aligns the interests of our executive officers with those of our stockholders.

Our named executive officers (or "NEOs") for 2023, who consist of each person who served as our principal executive officer during 2023 and our two other most highly compensated executive officers were:

- Abel Avellan, Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer
- Sean Wallace, Executive Vice President, Chief Financial Officer
- Brian Heller, Executive Vice President, General Counsel and Secretary

#### **Summary Compensation Table**

The information required by this item shall be included in an amendment to this Annual Report on Form 10-K filed following table summarizes the compensation of our NEOs for the years ended December 31, 2023 and 2022.

Name and Principal Position	Year	Salary	Bonus	Stock Awards	All Other Compensati	Total (\$)
		(\$)	(\$)	(\$)(1)	on (\$)	

Abel Avellan <sup>(2)</sup>	2023	-	-	-	-	-
<i>Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer</i>	2022	-	-	-	-	-
		250,0				
Sean Wallace	2023	00	-	-	-	250,000
		160,4		2,784,00		3,032,99
<i>Executive Vice President, Chief Financial Officer</i>	2022	17	-	0(3)	88,575(4)	2
		250,0				
Brian Heller	2023	00	-	-	-	250,000
<i>Executive Vice President, General Counsel and Secretary</i>		250,0	150,00			
	2022	00	0	-	-	400,000

- (1) Amounts represent the aggregate grant date fair value computed in accordance with ASC 718, *Compensation - Stock Compensation* ("ASC 718"), for equity awards granted. For further detail regarding the assumptions used to calculate the value of all equity awards made to executive officers refer to Note 12: *Stock-Based Compensation* in the accompanying consolidated financial statements.
- (2) Mr. Avellan has historically asked not to be paid any base salary in excess of applicable minimum wage requirements under federal law and, as has received substantially below-market base salary. Effective as of the completion of the Business Combination, Mr. Avellan is not receiving any salary from the Company.
- (3) On May 10, 2022, pursuant to the terms of his employment agreement, Mr. Wallace received an award of 700,000 restricted stock units ("RSUs") 400,000 of which are subject to time-based vesting and 300,000 of which are subject to performance-based vesting. The grant date fair value of 300,000 performance-based RSUs have been reported at \$0 based on the probable outcome of achieving the performance conditions at the time of grant. The grant date fair value of the performance-based RSUs assuming achievement of the performance conditions was \$2,088,000.
- (4) Pursuant to the terms of Mr. Wallace's employment agreement, he was reimbursed \$75,000 for direct out-of-pocket costs associated with his relocation to the Miami, Florida area where our corporate office is located, and \$13,575 for legal fees associated with the negotiation and execution of his employment agreement.

#### **Narrative Disclosure to the Summary Compensation Table**

This section discusses the material components of the executive compensation program for the year ended December 31, 2023 as applicable to our NEOs and reflected in the Summary Compensation Table above.

**Salaries.** Other than Mr. Avellan, our NEOs receive their respective base salaries to compensate them for services rendered to the Company. The base salary payable to each NEO is intended to provide a fixed component of compensation and reflects the executive's skill set, experience, role and responsibilities. As noted in the Summary Compensation Table, Mr. Avellan, our Chairman of the Board and Chief Executive Officer, historically asked not to be paid any base salary in excess of applicable

minimum wage requirements under federal law and received substantially below-market base salary, and effective as of the completion of the Business Combination, Mr. Avellan has not been receiving any base salary.

**Bonus.** The Compensation Committee awarded a discretionary cash bonus of \$150,000 to Mr. Heller on September 15, 2022 in recognition of his individual achievements and contributions as our Executive Vice President, General Instructions G(3) Counsel and Secretary. During 2023, none of our NEOs received any bonuses.

**Long-Term Equity Incentive Compensation.** The goal of our long-term, equity based incentive awards is to align the interests of our executives with the interests of stockholders. Because vesting is generally based on continued service, in addition to performance-based vesting in certain cases, equity-based incentives also foster the retention of our executives during the award vesting period.

#### **Equity Compensation Plans**

**AST LLC 2019 Equity Incentive Plan.** Prior to the Business Combination, equity-based incentive awards in the form of options were issued under the AST LLC 2019 Equity Incentive Plan ("AST LLC Incentive Plan") as incentives to our employees, non-employees, and non-employee members of our Board of Directors. Following the Business Combination, no further grants were made under the AST LLC Incentive Plan. However, the AST LLC Incentive Plan will continue to govern the terms and conditions of the outstanding awards granted under it.

**SpaceMobile 2020 Incentive Award Plan.** In connection with the Business Combination, we adopted the 2020 Incentive Award Plan (the "2020 Plan"). Awards may be made under the 2020 Plan covering an aggregate number of Class A Common Stock shares equal to 10,800,000 shares of Class A Common Stock. Any shares distributed pursuant to an award may consist, in whole or in part, of authorized and unissued common stock, treasury common stock or common stock purchased on the open market. The 2020 Plan provides for the grant of stock options, restricted stock, dividend equivalents, restricted stock units, incentive unit awards, stock appreciation rights, and other stock or cash-based awards. Each incentive unit issued pursuant to an award, if any, shall count as one share for purposes of calculating the aggregate number of shares available for issuance under the 2020 Plan.

Two types of equity awards have been granted under the 2020 Plan: (1) service-based options and (2) service-based and performance-based restricted stock units. Service-based options typically vest over a four year service period with 25% of the award vesting on the first anniversary of the employee's commencement date, and the balance thereafter in 36 equal monthly installments. Service-based restricted stock units typically vest over a four year service period with 25% of the award vesting on each anniversary of the employee's vesting commencement date. Performance-based restricted stock units typically vest when the specified performance conditions are met. Options typically expire no later than 10 years from the date of grant.

**NEO Long-Term Equity Incentive Compensation in 2023.** In May 2022, pursuant to the terms of Mr. Wallace's employment agreement, the Company's Board of Directors approved an award of 700,000 RSUs to Mr. Wallace, with 400,000 of the RSUs subject to service-based vesting and 300,000 RSUs subject to performance-based vesting. The service-based RSUs vest over a four year service period with 25% of the awards vesting on each anniversary of Mr. Wallace's vesting commencement date. The performance-based RSUs will vest upon satisfaction of two specified capital raising performance conditions. During 2023, none of our NEOs received any long-term incentive awards under our 2020 Plan.

#### **Other Elements of Compensation**

In 2022, pursuant to the terms of Mr. Wallace's employment agreement he received \$75,000 as reimbursement of direct out-of-pocket costs relating to his relocation to the Miami, Florida area where our corporate office is situated, and received \$13,575 as reimbursement of legal fees associated with the negotiation and execution of his employment agreement. Mr. Wallace's employment agreement also provided for reimbursement of certain temporary housing expenses, although no such expenses were incurred or reimbursed.

401(k) Plan. We currently maintain a 401(k) retirement savings plan for our United States based employees, including our NEOs, who satisfy certain eligibility requirements. Our NEOs are eligible to participate in the 401(k) plan on the same terms as other full-time employees. The Plan allows eligible employees to defer a portion of their compensation, within prescribed limits, on a pre-tax basis through contributions to the 401(k) plan. Currently, we do not match contributions made by participants in the 401(k) plan. We believe that providing a vehicle for tax-deferred retirement savings through our 401(k) plan adds to the overall desirability of our executive compensation package and further incentivizes our employees, including NEOs, in accordance with our compensation policies.

*Health/Welfare Plans.* All of our full-time employees, including NEOs, are eligible to participate in our health and welfare plans, including medical, dental and vision benefits, medical and dependent flexible spending account, short-term and long-term disability insurance, and life insurance.

#### **Named Executive Officer Employment Related Arrangements**

##### **Abel Avellan**

On July 18, 2018, our subsidiary, AST LLC, entered into an offer letter with Mr. Avellan, our Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, setting forth his initial base salary and eligibility to participate in our customary health, welfare and fringe benefit plans. In addition, on December 15, 2017, Mr. Avellan entered into AST LLC's form Nondisclosure, Confidentiality, Assignment and Noncompetition Agreement containing certain restrictive covenants, including non-compete and non-solicitation restrictions for a period of one year following a termination or cessation of employment for any reason. Mr. Avellan has historically asked not to be paid any base salary in excess of applicable minimum wage requirements under federal law and, as such, has received substantially below-market base salary. Mr. Avellan has not received any base salary from the Company since the consummation of the Business Combination in April 2021.

##### **Sean Wallace**

On April 25, 2022, our subsidiary, AST LLC, entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Wallace, our Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer. Pursuant to the employment agreement, Mr. Wallace receives an annual base salary of \$250,000 and is eligible to participate in our customary health, welfare and fringe benefit plans. The employment agreement provided that we would reimburse Mr. Wallace for certain temporary housing expenses, direct out-of-pocket relocation expenses up to \$75,000, and reasonable legal fees, up to a limit of \$15,000, in connection with the negotiation and execution of the employment agreement and all ancillary agreements. In the event of a Qualifying Termination, Mr. Wallace is entitled to a severance payment equal to 75% of his base salary, continued coverage for up to nine months under our group health plans at the same levels and the same cost to Mr. Wallace as would have applied if his employment had not terminated, and acceleration of any unvested portion of the time-based vesting restricted stock units equal to (A) in the event a Qualifying Termination occurs on or prior to the one-year anniversary of his start date, 100,000 restricted stock units, and (B) in the event a Qualifying Termination occurs after the one-year anniversary of the start date, (x) (1) the number of days during the period commencing on the last vesting date prior to the date of termination and

ending on the nine-month anniversary of the date of termination, (2) divided by 365, and multiplied by (y) 100,000. A "Qualifying Termination" means a termination of Mr. Wallace's employment by the Company without cause (other than by reason of his death or disability), by Mr. Wallace with Good Reason or by reason of a non-renewal of the employment period by the Company under the employment agreement. The employment agreement defines "Good Reason" as including a material diminution of Mr. Wallace's base salary, position, authority, duties or responsibilities, a change in his work location and a material breach by the Company of his initial equity award of RSUs, and includes a notice requirement and cure period. Payment of severance is subject to a release of claims in favor of the Company. In addition, any portion of the Performance-Based Portion of the Equity Award as to which the specified performance target has been satisfied as of, or within 120 days following, the date of termination, will vest on the later of the effective date of the release or the attainment of the applicable performance target within such 120 day period. Also, on April 25, 2022, Mr. Wallace entered into our form Nondisclosure, Confidentiality, Assignment and Noncompetition Agreement containing certain restrictive covenants, including non-compete and non-solicitation restrictions for a period of one year following a termination or cessation of employment for any reason.

*Brian Heller*

On February 4, 2021, our subsidiary, AST LLC, entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Heller, our Executive Vice President, General Counsel and Secretary. Under the employment agreement, Mr. Heller receives an annual base salary of \$250,000 and is eligible to participate in our customary health, welfare and fringe benefit plans. In the event of Qualifying Termination, Mr. Heller is entitled to a severance payment equal to 50% of his base salary, an annual bonus earned through the date of termination for the applicable calendar year based on the achievement of individual and/or Company performance goals as determined by the Board in its sole discretion, and acceleration of any unvested portion of the time-based vesting RSUs equal to (A) (x) the number of days during the period commencing on the last vesting date prior to the date of termination and ending on the six-month anniversary of the date of termination, (y) divided by 365, and multiplied by (B) 51,250. A "Qualifying Termination" means a termination of Mr. Heller's employment by the Company without cause (other than by reason of his death or disability), by Mr. Heller with Good Reason or by reason of a non-renewal of the employment period by the Company under the employment agreement. The employment agreement defines "Good Reason" as including a material diminution of Mr. Heller's base salary, position, authority, duties or responsibilities and a change in his work location, and includes a notice requirement and cure period. Payment of severance is subject to a release of claims in favor of the Company. Also, on February 4, 2021, Mr. Heller entered into our form Nondisclosure, Confidentiality, Assignment and Noncompetition Agreement containing certain

---

restrictive covenants, including non-compete and non-solicitation restrictions for a period of one year following a termination or cessation of employment for any reason.

**Outstanding Equity Awards at 2023 Fiscal Year-End**

The following table sets forth certain information regarding our equity-based awards held by the Named Executive Officers as of December 31, 2023.

47

Name	Stock Awards				
	Number of Shares or Units of Stock That Have Not Vested (#)(1)	Market Value of Shares or Units of Stock That Have Not Vested (\$)(2)	Equity Incentive Plan Awards: Number of Unearned Shares, Units or Other Rights That Have Not Vested (#)(3)	Equity Incentive Plan Awards: Market or Payout Value of Unearned Shares, Units or Other Rights That Have Not Vested (\$)(2)	
	Vested (#)(1)	Vested (\$)(2)	Have Not Vested (#)(3)	Have Not Vested (\$)(2)	
	-	-	-	-	
	Abel Avellan	-	-	-	
	Sean Wallace	300,000	1,809,000	300,000	1,809,000
Brian Heller	102,500	618,075	145,000	874,350	

(1) Mr. Wallace's 400,000 RSUs vest over a four year service period with 25% of the awards vesting on each anniversary of the May 10, 2022 vesting commencement date. Mr. Heller's 205,000 RSUs vest over a four year service period with 25% of the awards vesting on each anniversary of the February 8, 2021 vesting commencement date.

(2) Fair market value of awards was \$6.03 per share as of December 31, 2023.

(3) Mr. Wallace's 300,000 RSUs vest upon satisfaction of two specified capital raising performance conditions. Half of each portion of these RSUs will vest upon the attainment of the specified performance targets and the remaining half of each portion of these RSUs will vest on the first anniversaries of the attainment of the specified performance targets. Mr. Wallace's 75,000 RSUs vested on March 15, 2024, upon the certification of the Compensation Committee of the satisfaction of one of the performance conditions. The remaining 75,000 RSUs will vest on March 15, 2025, subject to Mr. Wallace's continued service through the vesting date. Mr. Heller's 145,000 RSUs vest upon satisfaction of certain specified performance conditions. Mr. Heller's 72,500 RSUs vested on March 15, 2024, upon the certification of the Compensation Committee of the satisfaction of the performance conditions. The remaining 72,500 RSUs will vest on March 15, 2025, subject to Mr. Heller's continued service through the vesting date.

64

## Pay Versus Performance

Pursuant to Section 953(a) of the Dodd-Frank Act and Item 402(v) of SEC Regulation S-K, we are providing the following information about the relationship between executive "compensation actually paid" (or "CAP"), as defined by SEC rules, to the Company's principal executive officer ("PEO") and non-PEO named executive officers (the "Non-PEO NEOs") and certain aspects of the financial performance of the Company. The Compensation Committee does not utilize CAP as the basis for making compensation decisions.

The following table sets forth certain information regarding pay versus performance as of December 31, 2023.

Year <sup>(1)</sup>	Summary Compensation to PEO <sup>(2)</sup>	Compensation to PEO (\$) <sup>(3)</sup>	Average Summary Compensation Table Total for	Average Compensation Actually Paid to	AST SpaceMobile Total	Net Income

	<b>n Table Total for PEO (\$)<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Non-PEO NEOs (\$)<sup>(2)</sup></b>	<b>Non-PEO NEOs (\$)<sup>(3)</sup></b>	<b>Shareholder Return (\$)<sup>(4)</sup></b>	<b>(Loss) (\$000)<sup>(5)</sup></b>
2023	-	\$ 250,000	\$ 537,444	\$ 44	\$ (87,561)
2022	-	\$ 1,716,496	\$ 989,452	\$ 35	\$ (21,640)
2021	\$ 8,995	\$ 8,995	\$ 1,430,211	\$ 160,579	\$ 58

(1) Abel Avellan served as the PEO for the entirety of 2023, 2022, and 2021. Our Non-PEO NEOs for the applicable years were as follows:

• 2023: Sean Wallace and Brian Heller

• 2022: Sean Wallace and Brian Heller

• 2021: Brian Heller and Thomas Severson

(2) Amounts reported in these columns represent (i) the total compensation reported in the Summary Compensation Table ("SCT") for the applicable year in the case of our PEO, Mr. Avellan, and (ii) the average of the total compensation reported in the SCT for the applicable year for our Non-PEO NEOs reported for the applicable year.

(3) Amounts reported in these columns represent compensation actually paid; adjustments were made to the amounts reported in the SCT for the applicable year.

(4) Total Shareholder Return ("TSR") is cumulative for the measurement periods beginning on December 31, 2020 and ending on December 31 of each year 2023, 2022 and 2021, respectively, calculated in accordance with Item 201(e) of Regulation S-K.

(5) The dollar amounts reported represent the amount of net income (loss) attributable to common stockholders reflected in the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

A reconciliation of the adjustments for Mr. Avellan and for the average of the Non-PEO NEOs is set forth in the following table, which describes the adjustments, each of which is prescribed by the SEC rules, to calculate the CAP from SCT amounts. Equity values are calculated in accordance with ASC 718.

	2023	2023	2022	2022	2021	2021
	PEO	Average Non- PEO	PEO	Average Non- PEO	PEO	Average Non- PEO
		NEOs		NEOs		NEOs
<b>Summary Compensation Table Total <sup>(1)</sup></b>	-	\$ 250,000	-	\$ 1,716,496	\$ 8,995	\$ 1,430,211
Minus Stock Award Value & Option Award Value Reported in SCT for the Covered Year	-	-	-	\$ 1,392,000	-	\$ 1,025,000
Plus Year End Fair Value of Equity Awards Granted During the Covered Year that Remain Outstanding and Unvested as of Last Day of the Covered Year	-	-	-	964,000	-	813,850

Plus Year over Year Change in Fair Value as of the Last Day of the Covered Year of Outstanding and Unvested Equity	-	243,5	-	(239,85)	-	(735,90)
Awards Granted in Prior Years		13		0		0
Plus Fair Value as of Vesting Date of Equity Awards Granted and Vested in the Covered Year	-	-	-	-	-	-
Plus Year over Year Change in Fair Value as of the Vesting Date of Equity Awards Granted in Prior Years that Vested During the Covered Year	-	43,93	-	(59,194)	-	(322,58)
Minus Fair Value at the End of the Prior Year of Equity Awards that Failed to Meet Vesting Conditions in the Covered Year	-	1	-	-	-	2
Plus Value of Dividends or other Earnings Paid on Stock or Option Awards Not Otherwise Reflected in Fair Value or Total Compensation for the Covered Year	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Compensation Actually Paid</b>	-	<b>\$ 537,4</b>	-	<b>\$ 989,45</b>	<b>\$ 8,99</b>	<b>\$ 160,57</b>
	-	<b>44</b>	-	<b>2</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>9</b>

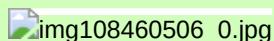
(1) Unvested equity values are computed in accordance with the methodology used for financial reporting purposes, and for unvested awards subject to performance-based vesting conditions, based on the probable outcome of such performance-based vesting conditions as of the last day of the year.

Pursuant to Item 402(v) of SEC Regulation S-K, we are providing the following graphic descriptions of the relationships between information presented in the pay versus performance table provided above.

66

#### Relationship Between CAP and Total Shareholder Return ("TSR")

The graph below reflects the relationship between the PEO and Average Non-PEO NEOs CAP and our TSR.



#### Relationship Between CAP and Net Income (Loss) Attributable to Stockholders

The graph below reflects the relationship between the PEO and Average Non-PEO NEOs CAP and our net income (loss) attributable to stockholders.



(1) Represents the amount of net loss attributable to common stockholders reflected in our financial statements for the applicable year.

67

## Compensation of Directors

The following table sets forth information for the fiscal year ended December 31, 2023 regarding the compensation awarded to, earned by or paid to our non-employee directors.

Name <sup>(1)</sup>	Fees Earned or Paid		Total (\$)
	in Cash (\$)	Equity Awards (\$) <sup>(2)</sup>	
Tareq Amin <sup>(3)</sup>	-	-	-
Adriana Cisneros	-	-	-
Alexander Coleman	75,000	150,000	225,000
Luke Ibbetson	-	-	-
Edward Knapp	-	-	-
Hiroshi Mikitani	-	-	-
Ronald Rubin	60,000	150,000	210,000
Richard Sarnoff	60,000	150,000	210,000
Julio A. Torres	82,500	150,000	232,500

(1) Mr. Avellan, Chairman of the Company's board of directors and Chief Executive Officer, is not included in this table as he was our employee in 2023 and did not receive compensation for services as a director. All compensation paid to Mr. Avellan for his services provided to us in 2023 is reflected in the Summary Compensation Table above.

(2) On August 17, 2023, the listed non-employee directors were granted 38,462 RSUs. Amounts represent the aggregate grant date fair value of the awards computed in accordance with ASC 718. We provide information regarding the assumptions used to calculate the value of equity awards in Note 12 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

(3) Mr. Amin was a member of the board until August 8, 2023.

### Director Compensation Program

In connection with the completion of the Business Combination, we approved and implemented a compensation program that consists of annual cash retainer fees and long-term equity awards for the non-employee directors of our Board of Directors who are not affiliated with Antares Technologies LLC ("Antares"), Vodafone, ATC TRS II LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("American Tower") and Rakuten Mobile Singapore PTE, LTD, a Singapore private limited company ("Rakuten"), or any of their affiliates (the "Director Compensation Program"). Messrs. Coleman, Rubin, Sarnoff and Torres are eligible to participate in the Director Compensation Program. The material terms of the Director Compensation Program are summarized below.

#### Cash Compensation

- Annual Retainer: \$50,000
- Annual Committee Chair Retainer:
  - Audit: \$20,000
  - Compensation: \$15,000
  - Nominating and Corporate Governance: \$10,000
- Annual Committee Member (Non-Chair Retainer):
  - Audit: \$10,000
  - Compensation: \$7,500

o Nominating and Corporate Governance: \$5,000

Annual cash retainers are paid in quarterly installments in arrears and are pro-rated for any partial calendar quarter of service.

Equity Compensation

- *Initial Grant:* Each eligible director who was initially elected or appointed to serve on our Board of Directors after the completion of the Business Combination was automatically granted 11,755 RSUs with grant fair value of \$110,967 on August 24, 2021. The initial grant was to vest in full on the earlier to occur of (i) the one-year anniversary of the grant date and (ii) the date of the annual meeting of the stockholders following the grant date, subject to the director's continued service through the vesting date; provided, however, that the earliest vesting date was the 2022 annual meeting of stockholders.

68

---

- *Annual Grant:* Further, an eligible director who is serving on our Board of Directors as of the date of the annual meeting of the stockholders each calendar year beginning with calendar year 2022 will be automatically granted, on such annual meeting date, a restricted stock unit award with a value of approximately \$150,000, which will vest in full on the earlier to occur of (i) the one-year anniversary of the applicable grant date and (ii) the date of the next annual meeting following the grant date, subject to the director's continued service through the applicable vesting date.

In addition, each such award will vest in full upon a change in control of the Company (as defined in the 2020 Plan).

Our 2023 annual shareholders meeting was held on August 17, 2023. On this date, the 2022 annual grant vested in full and the 2023 annual grant of 38,462 RSUs with grant fair value of \$150,000 was given to eligible directors. Refer to the directors' compensation table above for further detail.

Compensation under the Director Compensation Program is subject to the annual limits on non-employee director compensation set forth in the 2020 Plan.

**Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters**

**Equity Compensation Plan Information**

Prior to the Business Combination, equity-based awards were granted under the AST LLC 2019 Equity Incentive Plan. The plan was approved in 2019 by the members of AST LLC. Following the completion of the Business Combination, no new awards were granted under the AST LLC Incentive Plan. Awards outstanding under the AST LLC Incentive Plan are in the form of stock options to purchase equity incentive units in AST LLC, which are convertible into our Class A Common Stock (or the cash equivalent thereof) as determined by us.

The SpaceMobile 2020 Incentive Award Plan allows for the issuance of up to 10,800,000 shares of our Class A Common Stock pursuant to equity-based awards which may be granted under the plan. The plan was approved by our stockholders

on April 1, 2021.

The following table lists awards previously granted and outstanding, and securities authorized for issuance, under the plan.

Plan Category	Number of Securities to be Issued Upon Exercise of Outstanding Options, Warrants or Rights	Number of Securities Remaining Available for Future Issuance Under the Equity Compensation Plans (Excluding Outstanding Options, Warrants, or Rights)
<i>Equity compensation plans approved by stockholders</i>		
SpaceMobile 2020		
Incentive Award Plan <sup>(1)</sup>	6,192,498	\$ 9.27 4,607,502
AST LLC 2019 Equity Incentive Plan	7,770,421	\$ 1.11 2,045,160 <sup>(2)</sup>
<i>Equity compensation plans not approved by stockholders</i>	-	-

(1) Includes 3,313,080 stock options and 2,879,418 restricted stock awards. Only the stock options have an associated exercise price.

(2) Following the completion of the Business Combination, no new awards were granted under the AST LLC Incentive Plan.

### Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management

The following sets forth information required by this item regarding the beneficial ownership of our voting shares by:

- each person who is known to be the beneficial owner of more than 5% of our voting shares;
- each of our executive officers and directors; and
- all of our executive officers and directors as a group.

69

Beneficial ownership is determined according to the rules of the SEC, which generally provide that a person has beneficial ownership of a security if he, she or it possesses sole or shared voting or investment power over that security, including options and warrants that are currently exercisable or exercisable within 60 days. A person is also deemed to be a beneficial owner of any securities of which that person has a right to acquire beneficial ownership within 60 days, provided that any person who acquires any such right with the purpose or effect of changing or influencing the control of the issuer, or in connection with or as a participant in any transaction having such purpose or effect, immediately upon such acquisition shall be included/deemed to be the beneficial owner of the securities which may be acquired through the

exercise of such right. Under these rules, more than one person may be deemed to be a beneficial owner of the same securities.

Our authorized Common Stock consists of Class A Common Stock, Class B Common Stock and Class C Common Stock. Holders of Class A Common Stock and Class B Common Stock are entitled to one vote per share on all matters submitted to the stockholders for their vote or approval. Until the Sunset Date described in an amendment to the Stockholders' Agreement, holders of Class C Common Stock are entitled to this Annual Report the lesser of (i) 10 votes per share and (ii) the Class C Share Voting Amount on Form 10-K filed all matters submitted to stockholders for their vote or approval. From and after the Sunset Date, holders of Class C Common Stock will be entitled to one vote per share. Beneficial ownership of shares of our Common Stock is based on 138,132,310 shares of Class A Common Stock, 39,747,448 shares of Class B Common Stock and 78,163,078 shares of Class C Common Stock issued and outstanding as of March 28, 2024.

70

Unless otherwise indicated, we believe that all persons named in accordance with the table below have sole voting and investment power with General Instructions G(3). respect to all shares of voting shares beneficially owned by them. To our knowledge, none of our shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by any executive officer or director have been pledged as security.

Name and Address of Beneficial Owner <sup>(1)</sup>	Class A Common Stock		Class B Common Stock		Class C Common Stock		Combined Voting Power <sup>(%)<sup>(2)</sup></sup>
	Number	%	Number	%	Number	%	
<i>Five percent Holders:</i>							
Rakuten Mobile, Inc. <sup>(3)</sup>	2,500,000	1.8 %	28,520,155	71.8 %	-	-	3.2 %
Antares Technologies LLC <sup>(4)</sup>	10,445,200	7.6 %	-	-	-	-	1.1 %
Vodafone Ventures Limited <sup>(5)</sup>	1,000,000	*	9,044,454	22.8 %	-	-	1.0 %
ATC TRS II LLC <sup>(6)</sup>	2,500,000	1.8 %	2,170,657	5.5 %	-	-	*
<i>Directors and Executive Officers:</i>							
Abel Avellan	-	-	-	-	78,163,078	100 %	81.5 %

Sean Wallace	288,63	*	-	-	-	-	*
	7						
	154,44						
Brian Heller	0	*	-	-	-	-	*
	175,30						
Shanti Gupta	7	*	-	-	-	-	*
	769,83						
Adriana Cisneros <sup>(4)</sup>	8	*	-	-	-	-	*
	3,370,5						
Alexander Coleman <sup>(7)</sup>	42	2.3 %	-	-	-	-	*
Luke Ibbetson	-	-	-	-	-	-	*
Edward Knapp	10,000	*	-	-	-	-	*
	2,500,0	28,520,					
Hiroshi Mikitani	00	1.8 %	155	71.8 %	-	-	3.2 %
Ronald Rubin	28,422	*	-	-	-	-	*
Richard Sarnoff	28,422	*	-	-	-	-	*
Julio A. Torres	28,422	*	-	-	-	-	*
All directors and executive officers, as a group (12 individuals)	7,354,0	28,520,		78,163,			
	30	5.3 %	155	71.8 %	078	100.0 %	85.2 %

\* Less than 1%

- (1) Unless otherwise noted, the business address of each of those listed in the table above is c/o AST SpaceMobile, Inc., Midland International Air & Space 2901 Enterprise Lane, Midland, Texas 79706.
- (2) Percentage of combined voting power represents voting power with respect to all shares of Class A common stock, Class B Common Stock and Class C common stock, voting together as a single class. Holders of Class A Common Stock and Class B Common Stock are entitled to one vote per share on all matters submitted to the stockholders for their vote or approval. Until the Sunset Date, holders of Class C Common Stock are entitled to the lesser of (i) 10 votes per share or (ii) (A) 88.31% minus (B) the total voting power of the outstanding stock of the Company (other than Class C Common Stock) owned or controlled by Avella and his permitted transferees, divided by (y) the number of shares of Class C Common Stock then outstanding on all matters submitted to stockholders for their vote or approval. From and after the Sunset Date, holders of Class C Common Stock will be entitled to one vote per share.
- (3) Includes 2,500,000 shares of Class A Common Stock held by Rakuten Mobile, Inc. ("Rakuten Mobile") and 28,520,155 shares of Class B Common Stock held by Rakuten USA. The business address of each of Mr. Mikitani Rakuten Mobile and Rakuten USA is 1-14-1 Tamagawa, Setagaya-ku, Tokyo 158-0094 Japan. Mikitani is the founder, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of Rakuten Mobile, which is the parent company of Rakuten USA, and as such has voting and investment discretion with respect to the shares of Common Stock held of record by Rakuten Mobile and Rakuten USA and may be deemed to have sole or shared beneficial ownership of the shares of Common Stock held directly by Rakuten Mobile and Rakuten USA.
- (4) The business address of each of Ms. Cisneros and Antares is c/o Cisneros Group of Companies, 700 NW 1st Avenue, Suite 1700, Miami, Florida 33136. Cisneros is the president of Antares, a subsidiary of the ultimate beneficial owner of these shares, 2014 Scesaplana I Trust, (the "Trust"), and sits on the board of directors of the Trust. However, under the Trust's constituent documents Ms. Cisneros is not permitted to and has no voting and investment discretion with respect to the shares of Common Stock held by Antares and, as a result, has no beneficial ownership of the Common Stock held directly by Antares. The shares reported as beneficially owned by Ms. Cisneros are comprised of (i) 5,600 shares of Class A Common Stock held directly by Ms. Cisneros's spouse Nicholas Griffin and (ii) 2,800 warrants held directly by Ms. Cisneros's spouse Nicholas Griffin, each of which is exercisable for one share of Class A Common Stock at a strike price of \$11.50 per share, (iii) 36,364 shares of Class A Common Stock held directly by Ms. Cisneros and (iv) 326,211 AST Incentive Equity Options, each of which is vested and exercisable for Incentive Equity Units in AST LLC, each of which is redeemable for one share of Class A Common Stock of the Issue (v) 398,863 AST Incentive Equity Options, each of which is vested and exercisable for Incentive Equity Units in AST LLC, each of which is redeemable for one share of Class A Common Stock on the later of (x) the 24-month anniversary of the closing of the business combination and (y) the six-month anniversary of the date on which such AST Incentive Equity Options vested.
- (5) The business address of Vodafone Ventures Limited is c/o Vodafone House, The Connection, Newbury, Berkshire, RG14 2FN, United Kingdom.
- (6) Represents American Tower's beneficial ownership of shares of our Common Stock. The Company has several agreements in place with American Tower. American Tower has the right to designate one individual to the Board of Directors. Currently, American Tower's designee is Edward Knapp, Chief Technical Officer, American Tower. The business address of ATC TRS II LLC is 116 Huntington Avenue, 11th floor, Boston, MA 02116.
- (7) Includes 1,413,312 shares of Class A common stock and additional 1,940,563 shares of Class A Common Stock underlying the private placement warrants.

### Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence

#### CEO Equity Ownership

Mr. Avellan, Chief Executive Officer of the Company, and his permitted transferees hold all of the Class C Common Stock, which prior to the Sunset Date described in the Stockholders' Agreement, will entitle such holders to cast the lesser of 10 votes per share and the Class C Share Voting Amount, the latter of which is a number of votes per share equal to (1) (x) an amount of votes equal to 88.3% of the total voting power of our outstanding voting stock, minus (y) the total voting power of our outstanding capital stock owned or controlled by Mr. Avellan and his permitted transferees, divided by (2) the number of shares of our Class C Common Stock then outstanding. As a result, as of March 28, 2024, Mr. Avellan and his permitted transferees control approximately 81.5% of the combined voting power of our Common Stock, and may control a majority of our voting power so long as the Class C Common Stock represents at least 9.1% of our total Common Stock.

#### Vodafone

We and Vodafone have agreed to enter into one or more definitive agreements for a commercial partnership that is anticipated to use the SpaceMobile Service (the "Vodafone Commercial Agreements"). In connection with the commercial agreement, we agreed not to enter into any agreement, term sheet, or letter of intent that grants another party the rights related to the provision of mobile services in the Vodafone markets or Vodafone partner markets prior to the execution of the Vodafone Commercial Agreements.

The information Vodafone Commercial Agreements are to include mutual exclusivity, conditioned upon Vodafone making the SpaceMobile Service available to all of its customers and certain promotional efforts, within all Vodafone markets for five years commencing on the launch of a commercial service in all of the Vodafone markets; preferential commercial terms in Vodafone partner markets; 50/50 revenue share for the SpaceMobile Service in Vodafone exclusivity markets; and the procurement, building and operating of mobile network ground stations at a mutually agreed cost by Vodafone. No payments have been made to date between us and Vodafone pursuant to the anticipated Vodafone Commercial Agreements. Vodafone has the right to designate one individual to our Board of Directors. Currently, Vodafone's designee is Luke Ibbetson, Head of Group Research & Development, Vodafone.

We entered into a side letter with Vodafone dated December 15, 2020, under which we agreed (i) not to enter into any material corporate strategic relationship or material commercial agreement with a party other than Vodafone and its affiliates that would be reasonably expected to materially frustrate our ability to satisfy the obligations under the Vodafone Commercial Agreements with certain exceptions; (ii) to allocate sufficient funds in the capital budget to facilitate compliance with the obligations under the Vodafone Commercial Agreements; and (iii) not to alter the business plan in a manner that is materially detrimental to our ability to satisfy the obligations under the Vodafone Commercial Agreements.

On January 16, 2024, we entered into a Convertible Security Investment Agreement (the "Investment Agreement") with Vodafone. Pursuant to the Investment Agreement, Vodafone agreed to purchase our subordinated convertible notes for an aggregate principal amount of \$25.0 million. In connection with the Investment Agreement, Vodafone Group Services

Limited ("Vodafone Group Services") have entered into letter agreements with AST LLC and us. The letter agreement between Vodafone Group Services and us provides, among other things, for an initial revenue commitment of \$25.0 million to us to be paid by Vodafone Group Services over a two and a half year period to be defined in a future definitive agreement for us to provide connectivity services. Also, Vodafone submitted a purchase order for network equipment from us to support planned commercial service.

#### **American Tower**

We and American Tower have entered into a side letter agreement that was subsequently amended and restated on December 15, 2020 to reflect the transactions and agreements contemplated by the Equity Purchase Agreement between us and NPA (the "Amended and Restated Letter Agreement"). The Amended and Restated Letter Agreement contemplates that us and American Tower will enter into commercial agreements to use American Tower facilities for the terrestrial gateway facilities in certain markets. The term of the operational agreement with American Tower is for an anticipated five years after the initial launch of commercial mobile services by us.

On March 22, 2022, we and American Tower entered into a non-binding term sheet reflecting the terms and conditions for the deployment of our gateway satellite technology equipment on property owned and operated by American Tower. Under the agreement, American Tower will provide us leased space and managed services at its current and future tower sites and data centers under the global master lease agreement to be entered into by the parties.

The usage of any American Tower services in a Vodafone market will be memorialized in a commercial agreement among all three parties. In markets where Vodafone does not operate ("Carrier Neutral Markets"), us and American Tower may enter into an agreement for American Tower to manage the operation of our deployed gateway facility in such market. In Carrier Neutral Markets where we require a third party to provide a gateway facility or services, we agree to not accept any bid that is inferior to American Tower's best and final proposal for such gateway facility or services. We also agree to use commercially reasonable efforts to utilize American Tower facilities in (i) Vodafone markets where Vodafone decides to not use its facilities, (ii) in Carrier Neutral Markets, and (iii) instances where we require a third-party vendor.

Additionally, we will work with American Tower to evaluate and plan gateway facility and radio access network data center deployments with preferred vendor status to offer carrier-neutral hosting facilities in certain equatorial markets. American Tower will serve as the preferred vendor for carrier neutral hosting facilities. We will pay American Tower a monthly connection fee for use of a carrier neutral hosting facility, which we expect will be charged back to each applicable MNO. If us and American Tower agree to construct a new carrier neutral hosting facility or improve an existing one and American Tower elects to fund all such capital expenditures, American Tower will provide us with a fair-market, long-term lease to such facility. No payments have been made to date between us and American Tower under the Amended and Restated Letter Agreement. American Tower has the right to designate one individual to our Board of Directors. Currently, American Tower's designee is Ed Knapp, Chief Technology Officer, American Tower.

#### **Rakuten**

On February 4, 2020, we entered into a commercial agreement with Rakuten for the development of exclusive network capabilities in Japan compatible with the mobile network of Rakuten and its affiliates, which agreement was amended and restated as of December 15, 2020 (the "Rakuten Agreement"). Under the terms of the Rakuten Agreement, we agreed to make investments in building network capabilities in Japan that are compatible with the mobile network of Rakuten and its affiliates. Furthermore, we will collaborate with Rakuten to ensure network capability with Rakuten's licensed frequencies, including full coverage in Japan with 3GPP Band 3 frequencies with multiple input multiple output ("MIMO") capability. Upon the launch of such coverage, Rakuten will receive unlimited, exclusive rights and usage capacity in Japan in exchange for a \$0.5 million annual maintenance fee payable to AST LLC or our successors. Furthermore, we will make \$5.0 million (or such lesser amount as mutually agreed upon the parties) in capital investments towards the design, assembly, acquisition and implementation of ground communication assets. Us and Rakuten will receive unlimited rights and usage of the ground assets for their respective operations, including, but not limited to, satellite and other telecommunication communications. The term of the Rakuten Agreement shall remain in effect until we fulfill obligations under the Rakuten Agreement. Rakuten has the right to designate two individuals to our Board of Directors. Currently, Rakuten has designated Hiroshi Mikitani, Founder, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, Rakuten, Inc. as a director and has the right to designate another individual.

The Rakuten Agreement includes key performance indicators ("KPIs") associated with the number of satellites launched, timing and coverage of the SpaceMobile Service in Japan in a phased manner that we were obligated to meet by June 2023. In connection with our inability to meet the applicable KPIs stated in the Rakuten Agreement by the deadline, we recognized an expense of \$10.0 million recorded in Other (expense) income, net in the first quarter of 2023 and paid the amount in the third quarter of 2023.

#### **Invesat and Antares Technologies**

On March 4, 2024, we and Invesat LLC ("Invesat"), which is part of the Cisneros Group of Companies, of which Ms. Adriana Cisneros, a member of our Board of Directors, is the Chief Executive Officer, completed a series of transactions (including a Blocker Merger Transaction as defined in the A&R Operating Agreement, the "Transactions") resulting in the acquisition by Antares of 10,445,200 shares of our Class A Common Stock. As part of the Transactions, 9,932,542 shares of our Class B Common Stock and 200,000 shares of our Class A Common Stock previously held by Invesat were cancelled.

As part of the Transactions, AST SpaceMobile Holdings II, LLC, a newly formed wholly owned subsidiary of us, merged with and into Invesat, with Invesat surviving such merger (the "First Merger") and, immediately following the First Merger, Invesat merged with and into AST SpaceMobile Holdings, LLC, a newly formed wholly owned subsidiary of us ("AST Holdings"), with AST Holdings surviving such merger (the "Second Merger"). After giving effect to the Transactions, the separate limited liability company existence of Invesat ceased.

In connection with the Transactions, we agreed to use commercially reasonable efforts to take steps necessary to allow for the amendment and/or assignment of each of the Stockholders' Agreement and the Registration Rights Agreement, within forty-five (45) days after the closings of the Transactions, to add an affiliate of Invesat, Antares, and remove Invesat as a party thereto to allow Antares to benefit from all of the rights previously held by Invesat thereunder. In the event that the Registration Rights

Agreement and the Stockholders' Agreement are not amended and/or assigned with such forty-five (45)-day period, we agreed to enter into a separate letter agreement with Antares which provides Antares with substantially the same rights as those held by Invesat LLC under each of the Registration Rights Agreement and the Stockholders' Agreement.

#### **Director Independence**

We are required by to comply with the applicable rules of Nasdaq in determining whether a director is independent. Prior to the filing of this item shall be included in an amendment report, our Board of Directors undertook a review of the independence of the individuals named above and have determined that each of Adriana Cisneros, Alexander Coleman, Ronald Rubin, Richard Sarnoff and Julio A. Torres qualifies as "independent" as defined under the applicable Nasdaq rules and that Messrs. Coleman, Rubin and Torres qualify as independent under Exchange Act Rule 10A-3 specific to this Annual Report on Form 10-K filed in accordance with General Instructions G(3). audit committee members.

#### **Item 14. Principal Accounting Fees and Services**

The information required by this item shall be included in an amendment to this Annual Report on Form 10-K filed in accordance with General Instructions G(3).

48 KPMG LLP ("KPMG") served as the independent registered public accounting firm for the Company beginning July 2021. The following table represents fees for professional services rendered by KPMG for the years ended December 31, 2023 and 2022.

	<b>2023</b>	<b>2022</b>
Audit Fees	\$ 706,400	\$ 921,610
Tax Fees	422,964	390,304
Total Fees	\$ 1,129,364	\$ 1,311,914

Audit fees include fees associated with the annual audit of our consolidated financial statements for the years ended December 31, 2023 and 2022, review of quarterly financial statements, statutory audit of certain foreign subsidiaries, and comfort letters and consents provided in connection with equity offerings.

Tax fees include fees associated with tax compliance services, including the preparation, review, and filing of certain tax returns, as well as tax consulting services.

Under its charter, our Audit Committee must review and pre-approve both audit and permitted non-audit services provided by our independent registered public accounting firm and shall not engage the independent registered public accounting firm to perform any non-audit services prohibited by law or regulation. Each year, the independent registered public accounting firm's retention to audit our financial statements, including the associated fee, is approved by the Audit Committee. Consistent with the policies and procedures of our written charter, all audit and tax services set forth above for 2023 were pre-approved by our Audit Committee, which concluded that the provision of such services by KPMG were compatible with the maintenance of the firm's independence. The Audit Committee has delegated to the Chairman of the Audit Committee the authority to evaluate and approve engagements on behalf of the Audit Committee in the event that a

need arises for pre-approval between regular Audit Committee meetings. If the Chairman so approves any such engagements, he will report that approval to the full Audit Committee at the next Audit Committee meeting.

#### Item 15. Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules

The following exhibits are filed as part of, or incorporated by reference into, this Annual Report on Form 10-K.

No.	Description of Exhibit
3.1	<a href="#">Second Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of AST SpaceMobile, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
3.2	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Bylaws of AST SpaceMobile, Inc. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.2 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
4.1*	<a href="#">Description of Registrant's Securities.</a>
4.2	<a href="#">Specimen Common Stock Certificate of the Registrant (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
4.3	<a href="#">Specimen Warrant Certificate of the Registrant (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.2 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
4.4	<a href="#">Warrant Agreement, dated September 13, 2019, between Continental Stock Transfer &amp; Trust Company and New Providence Acquisition Corp. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 4.1 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on September 16, 2019).</a>
10.1	<a href="#">Stockholders' Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.2	<a href="#">Sponsor Voting Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.3	<a href="#">Registration Rights Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.4	<a href="#">Tax Receivable Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.4 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.5	<a href="#">Fifth Amended and Restated Limited Liability Limited Company Operating Agreement of AST &amp; Science, LLC (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.5 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>

10.6†	<a href="#">AST SpaceMobile, Inc. 2020 Incentive Award Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.6 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.7†	<a href="#">AST SpaceMobile, Inc. 2020 Incentive Award Plan – Form of Stock Option Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.7 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.8†	<a href="#">AST SpaceMobile, Inc. 2020 Incentive Award Plan – Form of Restricted Stock Unit Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.8 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.9†	<a href="#">AST SpaceMobile, Inc. 2020 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.9 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.10†	<a href="#">Form of Director and Officer Indemnification Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.10 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.11†	<a href="#">Non-Employee Director Compensation Policy (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.11 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.12†	<a href="#">Offer Letter between AST SpaceMobile, Inc. and Abel Avellan (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.12 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.13†	<a href="#">Employment Agreement between AST SpaceMobile, Inc., AST &amp; Science, LLC and Sean Wallace (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 29, 2022).</a>
10.14†	<a href="#">Offer Letter between AST SpaceMobile, Inc. and Thomas Severson (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.13 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>
10.15†	<a href="#">Consulting Agreement, dated as of May 16, 2022 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on May 16, 2022).</a>
10.16†	<a href="#">Letter Agreement between AST SpaceMobile, Inc. and Brian Heller (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.14 to the registrant's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the SEC on March 31, 2022).</a>
10.17†	<a href="#">Offer Letter, dated as of September 14, 2021, between AST &amp; Science LLC and Shanti Gupta (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the registrant's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed with the SEC on November 15, 2021).</a>
10.18	<a href="#">Amended and Restated Series B Preferred Shares Purchase Agreement, dated as of February 4, 2020, by and among AST &amp; Science, LLC, Vodafone Ventures Limited, ATC TRS II LLC and Rakuten Mobile Singapore PTE. LTD. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.15 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</a>

10.19	<a href="#">Letter Agreement, dated as of December 15, 2020, by and between AST &amp; Science, LLC and Vodafone Ventures Limited (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.16 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed</a>
-------	---

	<u>with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</u>
10.20	<u>Letter Agreement, dated as of December 15, 2020, by and between AST &amp; Science, LLC and ATC TRS II LLC, as predecessor in interest to ATC TRS IV LLC (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.17 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</u>
10.21	<u>Amended and Restated Commercial Agreement, dated as of December 15, 2020, by and between AST &amp; Science, LLC and Rakuten Mobile Singapore Pte. Ltd. (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.18 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</u>
10.22	<u>License Agreement, dated June 21, 2019, by and between SRS Space Limited and AST &amp; Science, LLC (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.19 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</u>
10.23	<u>Design and Manufacturing Agreement, dated September 23, 2020, by and between Dialog Semiconductor Operations Services Limited and AST &amp; Science LLC (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.21 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</u>
10.24	<u>Sublease Agreement, dated November 13, 2018, by and between the Midland Development Corporation and AST &amp; Science, LLC (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.22 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on April 12, 2021).</u>
10.25	<u>Subscription Agreement, by and between New Providence Acquisition Corp. and the undersigned subscriber party thereto (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the registrant's Current Report on Form 8-K filed with the SEC on December 16, 2020).</u>
10.26	<u>Common Stock Purchase Agreement, dated as of May 6, 2022, between AST SpaceMobile, Inc. and B. Riley Principal Capital, LLC (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 8-K filed with the SEC on May 6, 2022).</u>
10.27	<u>Registration Rights Agreement, dated as of May 6, 2022, between AST SpaceMobile, Inc. and B. Riley Principal Capital, LLC (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Form 8-K filed with the SEC on May 6, 2022).</u>
10.28	<u>Equity Distribution Agreement dated as of September 8, 2022 between AST Spacemobile, Inc., AST &amp; Science, LLC, Evercore Group L.L.C. and B. Riley Securities, Inc. (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 1.1 to the Company's Form 8-K filed with the SEC on September 9, 2022).</u>
10.29	<u>Senior Secured Term Loan Credit Agreement between AST SpaceMobile, Inc., AST &amp; Science, LLC, the Lenders from time to time party thereto and ACP Post Oak Credit II LLC, dated as of August 14, 2023 (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 8-K filed with the SEC on August 15, 2023).</u>
10.30	<u>Guarantee and Collateral Agreement, made by AST &amp; Science, LLC, AST SpaceMobile, Inc. as Grantor, and each of the other Grantors named therein, in favor of ACP Post Oak Credit II LLC, dated as of August 14, 2023 (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Form 8-K filed with the SEC on August 15, 2023).</u>

10.31	<u>Loan Agreement between AST &amp; Science, LLC, AST &amp; Science Texas LLC, AST SpaceMobile Manufacturing, LLC and Lone Star State Bank of West Texas, dated as of August 14, 2023 (Incorporated by reference to</u>
-------	---

	<a href="#">Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Form 8-K filed with the SEC on August 15, 2023)</a>
10.32	<a href="#">Convertible Security Investment Agreement, dated as of January 16, 2024, by and among AST SpaceMobile, Inc. and the parties named therein (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Form 8-K filed with the SEC on January 18, 2024)</a>
10.33	<a href="#">Form of Investor and Registration Rights Agreement (Incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Form 8-K filed with the SEC on January 18, 2024)</a>
21.1*	<a href="#">List of subsidiaries of AST SpaceMobile, Inc.</a>
23.1*	<a href="#">Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm (KPMG LLP).</a>
24.1	<a href="#">Power of Attorney (included in signature page).</a>
31.1*	<a href="#">Certification of Principal Executive Officer Pursuant to Securities Exchange Act Rules 13a-14(a), as adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.</a>
31.2*	<a href="#">Certification of Chief Financial Officer Pursuant to Securities Exchange Act Rules 13a-14(a), as adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.</a>
32.1*	<a href="#">Certification of Principal Executive Officer Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.</a>
32.2*	<a href="#">Certification of Chief Financial Officer Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.</a>
97.1†*	<a href="#">AST SpaceMobile, Inc. Policy for the Recovery of Erroneously Awarded Incentive-Based Compensation</a>
101.INS	Inline XBRL Instance Document.
101.CAL	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase Document.
101.SCH	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema with Embedded Linkbases Document.

76

101.LAB	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Labels Linkbase Document.
101.PRE	Inline XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase Document.
104	Cover Page Interactive Data File (embedded within the Inline XBRL document)

† Management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement

\* Filed herewith

77

---

**INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

<a href="#">Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm (KPMG LLP, Miami, FL, Auditor Firm ID: 185)</a>	<b>52 79</b>
<a href="#">Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022</a>	<b>53 80</b>
<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022</a>	<b>54 81</b>
<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss) for the Years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022</a>	<b>55 82</b>
<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity for the Years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022</a>	<b>56 83</b>
<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022</a>	<b>57 84</b>
<a href="#">Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</a>	<b>58 85</b>

**51 78**

---

**Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

To the Stockholders and the Board of Directors  
 AST SpaceMobile, Inc.:

**Opinion on the Consolidated Financial Statements**

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of AST SpaceMobile, Inc. and subsidiaries (the Company) as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive income (loss), stockholders' equity, and cash flows for the years then ended, and the related notes (collectively, the consolidated financial statements). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the years then ended, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

**Basis for Opinion**

These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audits, we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.

Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ KPMG LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2021.

Miami, Florida

March 31, 2023 April 1, 2024

5279

---

**AST SPACEMOBILE, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS**  
*(Dollars in thousands, except share data)*

	Decembe		As of December 31,	
	r 31,			
	202	202	2023	2022
	2	1		
<b>ASSETS</b>				
<b>Current assets:</b>				
	23	32		
	8,5	1,7		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 88	\$ 87	\$ 85,622	\$ 238,588
	66	2,7		
Restricted cash	8	50	2,475	668
		2,1		
Accounts receivable	-	73		
		1,4		
Inventories	-	12		
	4,1	2,8		
Prepaid expenses	00	31	4,591	4,100
	24,			
	95	4,8		
Other current assets	4	50	14,194	24,954
	26	33		
	8,3	5,8		
<b>Total current assets</b>	10	03	106,882	268,310
<b>Property and equipment:</b>				
	92,	67,		
	07	61		
BlueWalker 3 satellite - construction in progress	7	5		
<b>Non-current assets:</b>				
	53,	28,		
	91	32		
Property and equipment, net	2	7	238,478	145,989
	14	95,		
	5,9	94		
<b>Total property and equipment, net</b>	89	2		

<b>Other non-current assets:</b>				
	7,6	7,9		
Operating lease right-of-use assets, net	71	91	13,221	7,671
	3,6			
Goodwill	-	41		
	16,			
	40	55		
Other non-current assets	2	9	2,311	16,402
	24,	12,		
	07	19		
<b>Total other non-current assets</b>	3	1		
	43	44		
	8,3	3,9		
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	\$ 72	\$ 36	\$ 360,892	\$ 438,372
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>				
<b>Current liabilities:</b>				
	13,			
	92	6,6		
Accounts payable	\$ 9	\$ 38	\$ 20,575	\$ 13,929
	13,			
	14	7,4		
Accrued expenses and other current liabilities	5	69	23,926	12,903
	6,6			
Deferred revenue	-	36		
	72	63		
Current operating lease liabilities	2	4	1,468	722
Current portion of long-term debt, net			252	242
	27,	21,		
	79	37		
<b>Total current liabilities</b>	6	7	46,221	27,796
<b>Non-current liabilities:</b>				

	38,	58,		
	94	06		
Warrant liabilities	6	2	29,960	38,946
	7,0	7,5		
Non-current operating lease liabilities	46	25	11,900	7,046
	4,7	5,0		
Long-term debt	58	00		
Long-term debt, net			59,252	4,758
	78,	91,		
	54	96		
<b>Total liabilities</b>	6	4	147,333	78,546
<b>Commitments and contingencies (Note 13)</b>				
<b>Commitments and contingencies (Note 10)</b>				
<b>Stockholders' Equity:</b>				
Class A Common Stock, \$.0001 par value, 800,000,000 shares authorized, 71,819,926 and 51,730,904 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively.	7	5		
Class B Common Stock, \$.0001 par value, 200,000,000 shares authorized, 50,041,757 and 51,636,922 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively.	5	5		
Class C Common Stock, \$.0001 par value, 125,000,000 shares authorized, 78,163,078 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively.	8	8		
Class A Common Stock, \$.0001 par value, 800,000,000 shares authorized, 90,161,309 and 71,819,926 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2023 and 2022, respectively.			9	7
Class B Common Stock, \$.0001 par value, 200,000,000 shares authorized, 50,041,757 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2023 and 2022.			5	5
Class C Common Stock, \$.0001 par value, 125,000,000 shares authorized, 78,163,078 shares issued and outstanding as of December 31, 2023 and 2022.			8	8
	23	17		
	5,3	1,1		
Additional paid-in capital	84	55	288,404	235,384

	22	(4		
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	9	33)		
Accumulated other comprehensive income			227	229
	(10	(7		
	2,1	0,4		
Accumulated deficit	01)	61)	(189,662)	(102,101)
	22	25		
	6,2	1,6		
Noncontrolling interest	94	93	114,568	226,294
	35	35		
	9,8	1,9		
<b>Total stockholders' equity</b>	26	72	213,559	359,826
	43	44		
	8,3	3,9		
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>	<b>\$ 72</b>	<b>\$ 36</b>	<b>\$ 360,892</b>	<b>\$ 438,372</b>

*See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements*

5380

**AST SPACEMOBILE, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS**  
*(Dollars in thousands, except share and per share data)*

	Year Ended December 31,		Year Ended December 31,	
	2022		2023	
	2021		2022	
<b>Revenues</b>	\$ 13,825	\$ 12,405	\$ -	\$ 13,825

<b>Cost of sales (exclusive of items shown separately below)</b>	6,714	7,563	-	6,714
<b>Gross profit</b>	7,111	4,842	-	7,111
<b>Operating expenses:</b>				
Engineering services	54,212	29,599		
Engineering services costs			78,811	54,212
General and administrative costs	48,332	35,636	41,601	48,332
Research and development costs	45,620	23,440	47,486	45,620
Depreciation and amortization	4,711	2,913	54,469	4,711
<b>Total operating expenses</b>	152,875	91,588	222,367	152,875
<b>Other income:</b>				
<b>Other income (expense):</b>				
Gain on remeasurement of warrant liabilities	19,114	15,766	8,986	19,114
Other income (expense), net	24,154	(1,950)		
<b>Total other income, net</b>	43,268	13,816		
Interest income (expense), net			2,675	2,633
Other (expense) income, net			(10,290)	21,521
<b>Total other income (expense), net</b>			1,371	43,268
<b>Loss before income tax expense</b>	(102,496)	(72,930)	(220,996)	(102,496)
Income tax expense	617	331	(1,681)	(617)
<b>Net loss before allocation to noncontrolling interest</b>	(103,113)	(73,261)	(222,677)	(103,113)
Net loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	(71,473)	(42,708)	(135,116)	(71,473)
<b>Net loss attributable to common stockholders</b>	<u>\$ (31,640)</u>	<u>\$ (30,553)</u>	<u>\$ (87,561)</u>	<u>\$ (31,640)</u>
Net loss per share attributable to holders of Class A Common Stock <sup>(1)</sup>				
Basic and diluted	\$ (0.58)	\$ (0.37)	\$ (1.07)	\$ (0.58)
Weighted average shares of Class A Common Stock outstanding <sup>(1)</sup>				
Weighted-average shares of Class A Common Stock outstanding				

	54,437,0	51,729,7		
Basic and diluted	73	85	81,824,122	54,437,073

- (1) Net loss per share information for the year ended December 31, 2021 did not include the loss prior to the date of Business Combination. Refer to Note 18: Net Loss Per Share for further information.

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements

5481

**AST SPACEMOBILE, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS)**  
*(Dollars in thousands)*

	Year Ended		Year Ended December 31,	
	December 31,		December 31,	
	2022	2021	2023	2022
Net loss before allocation to noncontrolling interest	(103,11	(73,26	\$ (222,677)	\$ (103,113)
Other comprehensive loss				
Foreign currency translation adjustments	(295)	(666)	(6)	(295)
Total other comprehensive loss	(295)	(666)	(6)	(295)
Total comprehensive loss before allocation to noncontrolling interest	(103,40	(73,92	(222,683)	(103,408)
Comprehensive loss attributable to noncontrolling interest	8)	7)		
Comprehensive loss attributable to common stockholders				
	\$ (31,704)	\$ 8)	\$ (87,563)	\$ (31,704)

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements

5582

**AST SPACEMOBILE, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY**  
*(Dollars in thousands, except share data)*

Year Ended December 31, 2022										Year Ended December 31, 2023										
Year	Ended	December	31, 2023	Ac	cu	mu	lat	Class A	Class B	Class C	Accumulated	Common Stock	Common Stock	Common Stock	Additional	Other				
Stock	Stock	Stock	Stock	Ad	ed			Common Stock	Common Stock	Common Stock	Additional									
Co	mp	re	A																	
he	cc	No																		
nsi	u	nc																		
ve	m	on																		
S	S	Pai	Inc	ul	tro															
S	h	h	d-	om	at	llin	Tot													
h	a	a	in	e	ed	g	al													
ar	Val	r	Val	r	Val	Ca	(L	D	Int	Eq										
e	ue	e	ue	e	ue	pit	os	efi	ere	uit										
s	s	s	s	s	s	al	s)	cit	st	y	Shares	Values	Shares	Values	Shares	Values	Capital	Income (Loss)	Deficit	Interest
																			Equity	

## Balance,

December

31, 2022

Issuance of equity under employee stock plan	3,639,645	1	-	-	-	3,699	-	-	(3,475)	225
3 5 8 ,	( (									
Vesting of restricted stock units	2 7 1	4 1 9 - 6) 7)	4 3 - 6) 7)	4 1 - 6) 7)	4 1 - 6) 7)	673,829	-	-	(202)	(663) (865)
1 ,										
2	1	(								
Warrant exercise	0 0	0 9 - 3) 6	9 1 - 3) 6	9 1 - 3) 6	9 1 - 3) 6	673,829	-	-	(202)	(663) (865)
1 ,										
5 9 5 5 9 5 5	5 9 5 5 9 5 5	( 2 2 2 2 2 2 2								
Redemptio n of Class B common stock	1 6 5 - 5)	1 6 6 - 6)	6 3 - 6)	6 3 - 6)	6 3 - 6)	673,829	-	-	(202)	(663) (865)
1 ,										
Deconsoli dation of subsidiary	7 2 6 - 1) 5)	2 5 6 - 1) 5)	5 2 6 - 1) 5)	5 2 6 - 1) 5)	5 2 6 - 1) 5)	673,829	-	-	(202)	(663) (865)



<b>Balance, December 31, 2020 (1)</b>	-	\$	-	-	\$	-	-	\$	-	129,800.0	\$ 117,57	\$	(168)	\$ (39,908)	\$	2,490	\$ 79,98
										00	3					7	
Stock-based compensation pre Business																	
Combination	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		370	-	-	-	-	370	
Recapitalization transaction, net of transaction costs of \$45.7 million	51,729,		51,636,		78,163,		168,2	(129,800,	(117,9							342,1	
	704	5	922	5	078	8	34	000)	43)						291,811	20	
Stock-based compensation post Business																	
Combination	-	-	-	-	-	-	2,719	-	-	-	-	-	-	685	3,404		
Warrants exercised	1,200	-	-	-	-	-	139	-	-	-	-	-	-	(121)	18		
Adjustment to noncontrolling interest upon issuance of incentive units at AST LLC	-	-	-	-	-	-	63	-	-	-	-	-	-	(63)	-		
Foreign currency translation adjustments	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(265)	-	(401)	(666)			
															(73,2)		
Net loss	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	(30,553)	(42,708)	61		
	51,730,		51,636,		78,163,		171,1								351,9		
<b>Balance, December 31, 2021</b>	<b>904</b>	<b>\$ 5</b>	<b>922</b>	<b>\$ 5</b>	<b>078</b>	<b>\$ 8</b>	<b>\$ 55</b>	<b>-</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>(433)</b>	<b>\$ (70,461)</b>	<b>\$ 251,693</b>	<b>\$ 72</b>				

(1) Previously reported amounts have been adjusted for the retroactive application of the recapitalization related to the Business Combination. Refer to Note 3: Business Combination for further information.

Year Ended December 31, 2022													
	Class A			Class B			Class C			Additional	Accumulated		
	Common Stock		Common Stock	Common Stock		Common Stock	I		Other				
	Shares	Values	Shares	Values	Shares	Values	Paid-in	Income	Accumulated	Noncontrolling	Comprehe	ve	Total
							Capital	(Loss)	Deficit	Interest	Equity		
	51,730,90												
<b>Balance, December 31, 2021</b>	4	\$ 5	51,636,922	\$ 5	78,163,078	\$ 8	\$ 171,155	\$ (433)	\$ (70,461)	\$ 251,693	\$ 351,972		
Stock-based compensation	-	-	-	-	-	-	8,190	-	-	-	1,156	9,346	
Issuance of common stock, net of issuance costs	18,134,38		6	2	-	-	-	53,503	-	-	49,264	102,769	
Issuance of equity under employee stock plan	1,595,165	-	(1,595,165)	-	-	-	2,408	-	-	(2,335)	73		
Vesting of restricted stock units	358,271	-	-	-	-	-	19	-	-	(436)	(417)		
Warrant exercise	1,200	-	-	-	-	-	109	-	-	(93)	16		
Deconsolidation of subsidiary	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	726	-	(1,251)	(525)		

Foreign currency translation	-	-	-	-	-	-	(64)	-	(231)	(295)					
adjustments															
Net loss								(31,640)	(71,473)	(103,113)					
71,819.92															
<b>Balance, December 31, 2022</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>50,041,757</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>78,163,078</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>\$ 235,384</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>229</b>	<b>\$ (102,101)</b>	<b>\$ 226,294</b>	<b>\$ 359,826</b>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements

**5683**

**AST SPACEMOBILE, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS**  
*(Dollars in thousands)*

	Years Ended		Years Ended December 31,	
	December 31,		December 31,	
	2022	2021	2023	2022
<b>Cash flows from operating activities:</b>				
Net loss before allocation to noncontrolling interest	\$ 3)	\$ (73,261)	\$ (222,677)	\$ (103,113)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss before noncontrolling interest to cash				
used in operating activities:				
Gain on sale of interest in NanoAvionika UAB	(24,542)	-		
Gain on sale of Nano			-	(24,542)
Depreciation and amortization	4,711	2,913	54,469	4,711
Gain on remeasurement of warrant liabilities	(19,114)	(15,766)	(8,986)	(19,114)
Loss on sale of Property and equipment	305	-		
Non-cash lease expense	720	574		
Loss on disposal/sale of property and equipment			110	305
Amortization of debt issuance costs			1,155	-

Stock-based compensation	9,391	3,736	13,289	9,391
Issuance of common stock for commitment shares	332	-	-	332
<b>Changes in operating assets and liabilities:</b>				
Accounts receivable	(1,993)	(220)	-	(1,993)
Inventory			-	(2,461)
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(24,588)	(4,216)	12,082	(24,588)
Inventory	(2,461)	1,039		
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	18,438	2,091	(149)	18,438
Operating lease liabilities	(680)	(398)		
Operating lease right-of-use assets and operating lease liabilities			48	40
Deferred revenue	2,395	3,572	-	2,395
Other assets and liabilities	(16,265)	(159)	1,717	(16,265)
	(156,46			
Net cash used in operating activities	4)	(80,095)	(148,942)	(156,464)
<b>Cash flows from investing activities:</b>				
Purchase of property and equipment	(30,317)	(15,080)		
BlueWalker 3 satellite - construction in process	(26,967)	(39,712)		
Purchase of property and equipment and advance launch payments <sup>(1)</sup>			(118,807)	(57,284)
Proceeds from sale of Nano, net of cash deconsolidated and transaction costs	25,932	-	-	25,932
Net cash used in investing activities	(31,352)	(54,792)	(118,807)	(31,352)
<b>Cash flows from financing activities:</b>				
Proceeds from issuance of common stock	102,023	-		
Proceeds from Business Combination	-	456,420		
Direct costs incurred for the Business Combination	-	(39,542)		
Issuance of incentive equity units under employee stock plan	73	-		
Proceeds from debt			63,500	230
Repayments of debt			(242)	-
Payment for debt issuance costs			(9,653)	-
Proceeds from issuance of common stock, net of issuance costs			63,767	102,023
Issuance of equity under employee stock plan			225	73

Employee taxes paid for stock-based compensation awards			(865)	-
Proceeds from warrant exercises	14	14	-	14
Proceeds from debt	230	49		
Net cash provided by financing activities	102,340	416,941	116,732	102,340
Effect of exchange rate changes on cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash	195	(294)	(142)	195
Net (decrease) increase in cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash	(85,281)	281,760		
Net decrease in cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash			(151,159)	(85,281)
Cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash, beginning of period	324,537	42,777	239,256	324,537
Cash, cash equivalents and restricted cash, end of period	\$ 239,256	\$ 324,537	\$ 88,097	\$ 239,256
Supplemental disclosure of cash flow information:				
Non-cash transactions:				
Purchases of construction in process in accounts payable and accrued expenses	\$ 4,670	\$ 3,265		
Purchases of property and equipment in accounts payable and accrued expenses	256	1,429	\$ 18,409	\$ 4,926
Right-of-use assets obtained in exchange for operating lease liabilities	1,129	1,557	6,739	1,129
Purchases of property and equipment using proceeds from long-term debt	-	5,000		
Cash paid during the fiscal year for:				
Interest	\$ 224	\$ 13	\$ 3,243	\$ 224
Income taxes, net	684	186	492	684

(1) Includes BlueWalker 3 test satellite construction in progress costs incurred. Refer to Note 5: Property and Equipment for detail.

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements

5784

## AST SPACEMOBILE, INC.

### NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

DECEMBER 31, 2022 2023

#### 1. Organization and Nature of Operations

AST SpaceMobile, Inc., collectively with its subsidiaries ("SpaceMobile" or the "Company") is currently designing and developing the constellation of BlueBird ("BB") satellites in advance of launching its planned space-based Cellular Broadband network distributed through a constellation of Low Earth Orbit ("LEO") satellites. Once deployed and operational, the BB satellites are designed to provide connectivity directly to standard, off-the-shelf and unmodified off-the-shelf mobile phones or 2G/3G/4G LTE/5G devices at broadband speeds (the "SpaceMobile Service"). At that point, the Company intends to offer the SpaceMobile Service to cellular subscribers and others through wholesale commercial agreements with cellular service providers. The Company is headquartered in Texas where it operates from multiple locations that include its corporate headquarters and 185,000 square feet satellite assembly, integrating and testing ("AIT") facilities in Texas, facilities. The Company's intellectual property ("IP") portfolio is diverse, containing numerous and AIT various innovations of the direct-to-cell satellite ecosystem from space to Earth. The Company's IP portfolio consists of 36 patent families worldwide. As of December 31, 2023, the Company has more than 3,350 patent and engineering and development centers elsewhere in the United States, India, Scotland, Spain and Israel, patent pending claims worldwide, of which approximately 1,050 have been officially granted or allowed.

The Company launched its BlueWalker 3 ("BW3") test satellite on September 10, 2022. On November 14, 2022, the Company and announced the completion of the deployment of the communication phased array antenna of the BW3 test satellite in orbit, orbit on November 14, 2022. On April 25, 2023, the Company announced that it had successfully completed two-way voice calls directly to standard unmodified smartphones using the BW3 test satellite. On June 21, 2023, the Company announced that it had achieved repeated successful 4G download speeds of above 10 megabits per second ("Mbps") to standard unmodified smartphones using the BW3 test satellite. On September 19, 2023, the Company announced it had achieved repeated successful two-way voice calls directly to standard unmodified smartphones using 5G connectivity and successful download speeds of approximately 14 Mbps utilizing 5 megahertz ("Mhz") of low band spectrum via the BW3 test satellite. The Company is continuing initial intends to continue testing in efforts to achieve Cellular Broadband communications between capabilities of the BW3 test satellite, including further testing with cellular service providers and a standard/unmodified cellular phone devices.

On April 6, 2021 (the "Closing Date"), the Company completed a business combination (the "Business Combination") pursuant to that certain equity purchase agreement, dated as of December 15, 2020 (the "Equity Purchase Agreement"), by and among with AST & Science, LLC ("AST LLC"), New Providence Acquisition Corp. ("NPA"), the existing equity holders of AST LLC ("Existing Equityholders"), New Providence Acquisition Management LLC ("Sponsor"), and Mr. Abel Avellan, as representative of the Existing Equityholders. Immediately upon the completion of the Business Combination, NPA was renamed AST SpaceMobile, Inc. and AST LLC became a subsidiary of the Company. Refer to Note 3: Business Combination for further information.

. Following the consummation of the Business Combination, (the "Closing"), the combined company is was organized in an "Up-C" structure in which the business of is operated by AST LLC and its subsidiaries is held by SpaceMobile and continues to operate through the subsidiaries of AST LLC, and in which SpaceMobile's the Company's only direct assets consist of equity interests in AST LLC. The Company's Class A common stock and Public Warrants are listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbols "ASTS" and "ASTSW", respectively. As the managing member of AST LLC, SpaceMobile the Company has full, exclusive and complete discretion to manage and control the business of AST LLC and to take all action it deems necessary, appropriate, advisable, incidental, or convenient to accomplish the purposes of AST LLC. The Company's Class A Common Stock and accordingly, Public Warrants are listed on the financial statements of AST LLC are being prepared on a consolidated basis with SpaceMobile. Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbols "ASTS" and "ASTSW", respectively.

On September 6, 2022, The Company operates from multiple locations that include its corporate headquarters and 185,000 square feet AIT facilities in Texas where the Company completed final AIT is performed, and engineering and development centers elsewhere in the sale of its 51% interest in its former subsidiary NanoAvionika UAB ("Nano") which was located in Lithuania. The accompanying audited consolidated financial statements include the results of operations United States, India, Scotland, Spain, and cash flows of Nano for the period from January 1, 2022 through September 6, 2022. Subsequent to September 6, 2022, the results and financial position of Nano were deconsolidated from the Company's audited consolidated financial statements. Israel.

The Company is an "emerging growth company," as defined in Section 2(a) of the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "Securities Act"), as modified by the Jumpstart Our Business Startups Act of 2012 (the "JOBS Act"), and the Company may take advantage of certain exemptions from various reporting requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are not emerging growth companies, including, but not limited to, not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, reduced disclosure obligations regarding executive compensation in the Company's Company's periodic reports and proxy statements, and exemptions from the requirements of holding a non-binding advisory vote on executive compensation and stockholder approval of any golden parachute payments not previously approved.

## 2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies

### ***Basis of Presentation and Principles of Consolidation***

The accompanying audited consolidated financial statements and related notes have been prepared by the Company in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States ("U.S. GAAP") and the requirements of the Securities and Exchange Commission ("SEC"). The audited consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its subsidiaries. Intercompany transactions and balances have been eliminated upon consolidation. Certain comparative amounts have

been reclassified to conform to the current period presentation. These reclassifications had no effect on the reported results of operations.

Pursuant to the Business Combination, the transaction between 85

---

As the Company and AST LLC was accounted for as a reverse recapitalization in accordance with U.S. GAAP. Under this method of accounting, NPA was treated as is the "acquired" company for financial reporting purposes. Accordingly, for accounting purposes, the Business Combination was treated as the equivalent sole managing member of AST LLC issuing stock for and has full, exclusive and complete discretion to manage and control the net assets of the Company, accompanied by a recapitalization. The net assets business of AST LLC are stated at historical cost and net assets of NPA are stated at fair value, with no goodwill to take all actions it deems necessary, appropriate, advisable, incidental, or other intangible assets recorded. The consolidated assets, liabilities and results of operations prior convenient to accomplish the Business Combination are those purposes of AST LLC. The shares LLC, the financial statements of AST LLC and corresponding capital amounts prior to the Business Combination its subsidiaries have been retroactively restated as shares reflecting prepared on a consolidated basis with the exchange ratio established in the Equity Purchase Agreement. Company.

#### **Use of Estimates**

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with U.S. GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in the audited consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes. The Company bases its estimates and assumptions on historical experience when available and on other market-specific or other relevant assumptions that it believes to be reasonable under the circumstances. Significant estimates and assumptions reflected in these financial statements include, but are not limited to, useful lives assigned to property and equipment, the fair values of warrant liabilities, valuation and potential impairment of goodwill and long-lived assets, and equity-based compensation expense. The Company assesses estimates on an ongoing basis; however, actual results could materially differ from those estimates due to risks and uncertainties, including the continued uncertainty surrounding rapidly changing market and economic conditions due to the COVID-19 pandemic, geopolitical conflicts and recent higher macroeconomic conditions including changes in inflation and interest rates.

#### **Foreign Currency Translation and Transaction Gains and Losses**

The financial statements of the Company's foreign subsidiaries are translated from local currency into reporting currency, which is U.S. dollars, using the current exchange rate at the balance sheet date for assets and liabilities, and the weighted average exchange rate prevailing during the period for revenues and expenses. The functional currency of the Company's foreign subsidiaries is the local currency for each entity and, accordingly, translation adjustments for these subsidiaries are

included in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) within stockholders' equity. Realized and unrealized gains and losses resulting from foreign currency transactions denominated in currencies other than the functional currency are reflected as other (expense) income, (expense), net in the audited Consolidated Statements consolidated statements of Operations operations.

## **Segments**

Operating segments are defined as components of an entity for which separate financial information is available and that is regularly reviewed by the Chief Operating Decision Maker ("CODM") in deciding how to allocate resources to an individual segment and in assessing performance. The Company's CODM is its Chief Executive Officer. The Company has determined that it operates in one operating segment, as the CODM reviews financial information presented on a combined basis for purposes of making operating decisions, allocating resources, and evaluating financial performance.

## **Cash and Cash Equivalents**

The Company's cash consists of cash maintained within bank accounts at Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") insured financial institutions. The Company's cash equivalents consist of short-term money market funds. The Company considers all highly liquid investments with a maturity date of 90 days or less at the date of purchase to be cash equivalents.

### **Restricted Cash**

As of December 31, 2022, restricted cash of \$0.7 million represents deposits against the bank guaranty issued to the landlord for lease of a property. As of December 31, 2021, restricted cash of \$2.8 million represented deposits with a bank to exclusively use for capital improvements is primarily maintained at the Company's facilities in Texas, United States.

### **Accounts Receivable**

Accounts receivable include amounts billed and currently due from customers in connection with revenue generated by our former subsidiary, Nano. Accounts receivable are recorded when the right to consideration becomes unconditional. Following the

59

---

deconsolidation of the results and Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation ("FDIC") insured financial position of Nano from the Company's audited consolidated financial statements on September 6, 2022, the Company did not generate any additional revenue and did not record any accounts receivable.

### **Concentration of Credit Risk**

Assets that potentially subject the Company to significant concentration of credit risk consist primarily of cash and cash equivalents and trade receivables. The Company maintains its cash in accounts at financial institutions that the Company believes are of high credit quality. At times, the cash balance may exceed federally insured limits. The Company's foreign subsidiaries may deposit cash at institutions that are not insured by the FDIC. Interest income earned on cash and cash equivalents and restricted cash are reported under interest income (expense), net in the consolidated

statement of operations. Cash and cash equivalents and restricted cash as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 are subject to minimal credit risk.

#### **Restricted Cash**

Restricted cash represents cash held in escrow and deposit accounts. These funds are restricted as to withdrawal or use under the terms of the contractual agreements.

---

#### **Property and Equipment**

Property and equipment are carried at cost less accumulated depreciation. The Company's former subsidiary, Nano, accounted cost of self-constructed BB satellite assets consists of direct materials, direct labor, launch costs, and other direct costs attributable to bringing the asset to a working condition and desired location for all the intended use. Costs incurred, including direct materials purchased and launch payments made, until the completion of the Company's revenue for the years ended December 31, 2022 construction and 2021, and derived its revenue from customers located in various countries. Four customers accounted for approximately 40% launch of the Company's revenue for BB satellites are reported as satellite materials, satellites under construction, and advance launch payments within construction-in-progress. Once launched in orbit, the year ended December 31, 2022. Three customers accounted for approximately 42% costs of the Company's revenue for the year ended December 31, 2021 BB satellites are reported as satellites in orbit and 53% depreciation of the Company's trade receivables as of December 31, 2021. Prior to satellites commences once the sale of Nano, the Company managed credit risk and monitored its exposure to credit losses by reviewing the counterparties' credit at least quarterly, and maintained allowances BB satellites are ready for credit losses and anticipated losses, if necessary. The Company's methodology to measure the provision for credit losses considered all relevant information including information about historical collectability, current conditions and reasonable and supportable forecasts of future economic conditions. their intended use.

The Company did not record an allowance for credit losses for capitalizes the year ended December 31, 2021 due to the financial stability and creditworthiness costs of the Company's limited number of customers.

#### **Inventories**

Following the deconsolidation of the results and financial position of Nano from the Company's audited consolidated financial statements on September 6, 2022, the Company did not have any inventories as of December 31, 2022. Prior to the sale of Nano, inventories were stated at the lower of cost or net realizable value. Cost was determined by the first-in first-out ("FIFO") method. The cost of work-in-progress and finished goods was comprised of raw materials and satellite components, direct labor, and other direct engineering costs.

The Company's policy was to write-down inventory when conditions exist that suggest inventory may be in excess of anticipated demand or is obsolete based upon assumptions about future demand for the Company's products and market

conditions. The Company regularly evaluated the ability to realize the value of inventory based on a combination of factors including, but not limited to, historical usage rates, forecasted sales or usage, and estimated current or future market values. When recorded, inventory write-downs were intended to reduce the carrying value of inventory to its net realizable value. No reserve for excess and/or obsolete inventory was recognized during the year ended December 31, 2021.

### **BlueWalker 3 Capitalization**

The Company accounts for research and development costs related to the BlueWalker 3 test satellite based on guidance in ASC 730 - Research and Development ("ASC 730"). The Company determined satellites if there is an alternative future use for the BW3 test satellite as defined in this guidance. As such, certain costs related to the assembly of the BW3 test satellite are capitalized and reported as construction-in-progress ("CIP") on the audited Consolidated Balance Sheets. The Company capitalizes only those expenditures and ancillary costs that are directly attributable to assembly and testing and necessarily incurred to place the BW3 test satellite into its intended location and use. To date, capitalized expenditures include the materials costs, for satellite parts, launch cost, and other non-recurring costs directly associated with the BW3 development of the test satellite. The other non-recurring costs primarily include third-party engineers who are hired solely for the design, assembly, and testing of the BW3 test satellite and are responsible for the value and progression of the project. The costs for internal, recurrent engineering employees and consultants are expensed as engineering services costs and not capitalized to the CIP account on cost of the audited Consolidated Balance Sheets, as these employees are not directly associated with the development of BW3 the test satellite. The Company expects the BW3 test satellite to be ready for its intended use once. To date, the Company has established the technical feasibility of satellite broadband connectivity to unmodified cellular devices, at which point it will start depreciating the BW3 capitalized one test satellite, over its estimated useful life BW3, which is reported as part of two years.

### **Property satellites in orbit within property and Equipment equipment.**

The Company records capitalizes the costs of software obtained for internal use in accordance with the guidance for accounting for costs of computer software obtained for internal use. Capitalization of software obtained for internal use commences during the development phase of the project and ends when the asset is ready for its intended use. Software obtained for internal use is generally amortized on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful life and included within property and equipment at cost. Cost includes expenditures that are directly attributable on the Company's consolidated balance sheet. Capitalized costs of software obtained for internal use for the year ended December 31, 2023 were \$7.0 million, all of which was developed by third parties to the acquisition Company. No such costs were incurred in 2022. The Company records depreciation in a manner that recognizes the cost of its depreciable assets over their estimated useful lives using the straight-line method. Leasehold improvements are amortized over the shorter of the asset. The cost of self-constructed assets, including the BB satellites, consists of cost of materials and direct labor, and any other costs directly attributable to bringing the asset to a working condition and desired location for the intended use. During their

---

construction, items of property and equipment are classified as CIP. The materials to be used in construction of BB satellites are classified as CIP. When the asset is available for use, it is transferred from CIP to the appropriate category of property and equipment and depreciation terms of the asset commences. underlying leases or the estimated useful lives of

the improvements. Repairs and maintenance costs that do not extend the useful life or enhance the productive capacity of an asset are expensed as incurred and recorded as part of general and administrative operating expenses in the accompanying audited Consolidated Statements of Operations. incurred. Upon retirement or disposal of property and equipment, the Company derecognizes the cost and accumulated depreciation balance associated with the asset, with a resulting gain or loss from disposal included in the determination of net income or loss. Depreciation expense is computed using

The Company depreciates the straight-line method assets over the estimated useful lives which the Company has assigned to its underlying asset classes, which are as follows:

Estimated Useful Life	
Buildings	30 years
Computers, software, and equipment	2 to 5 years
Leasehold improvements	Shorter of estimated useful life or lease term
Satellite antennas	5 years
Satellites in orbit	2 to 7 years
Lab, assembly, and integration equipment	5 to 10 years
Others (1)	5 to 7 years

(1) Includes vehicles, furniture and fixtures, and a phased array test facility.

### Goodwill and Impairment of Long Lived Assets

The Company's goodwill balance was eliminated following the deconsolidation of the results and financial position of Nano from the Company's audited consolidated financial statements on September 6, 2022. Prior to the deconsolidation, the Company evaluated goodwill for impairment annually, or more frequently if events or changes in circumstances indicated that the goodwill may be impaired. Goodwill was tested at the reporting unit level, which is considered an operating segment or one level below an operating segment. The Company has one reporting unit: AST LLC.

The annual goodwill impairment test is based on either a qualitative or quantitative assessment. The Company has the option to perform a qualitative assessment to determine whether it is more likely than not that the fair value of a reporting unit is less than its carrying amount. If management determines this is the case, the Company is required to perform a quantitative assessment. A quantitative assessment is an analysis of the fair value of the reporting unit compared to its carrying value. A goodwill impairment charge is recorded for the amount by which the carrying amount exceeds the reporting unit's fair value. The Company performs the annual goodwill impairment test during the fourth quarter each year. There were no impairment charges for goodwill recognized for the year ended December 31, 2021.

Long-lived assets except for goodwill, consist of property and equipment and operating lease right-of-use assets. Long-lived assets are tested for recoverability whenever events or changes in business circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of the asset may not be fully recoverable. The Company continually evaluates whether events or circumstances have occurred that indicate that the estimated remaining useful life of long-lived assets may warrant revision or if events or circumstances indicate that the carrying value of these assets may be impaired. To compute whether assets have been impaired, the estimated undiscounted future cash flows for the estimated remaining useful life of the assets are compared to the carrying value. To the extent that the future cash flows are less than the carrying value, the assets are written down

to the estimated fair value of the asset. There were no impairment charges for long-lived assets recognized for the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022.

87

---

### ***Warrant Liabilities***

The Company accounts for warrants as either equity-classified or liability-classified instruments based on an assessment of the warrant's specific terms and applicable authoritative guidance in ASC 480, *Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity* ("ASC 480"), and ASC 815, *Derivatives and Hedging* ("ASC 815"). Management's assessment considers whether the warrants are freestanding financial instruments pursuant to ASC 480, whether they meet the definition of a liability pursuant to ASC 480, and whether the warrants meet all of the requirements for equity classification under ASC 815, including whether the warrants are indexed to the Company's own common stock and whether the warrant holders could potentially require "net cash settlement" in a circumstance outside of the Company's control, among other conditions for equity classification. This assessment, which requires the use of professional judgment, is conducted at the time of warrant issuance and as of each subsequent quarterly period-end date while the warrants are outstanding.

Issued or modified warrants that meet all of the criteria for equity classification are recorded as a component of additional paid-in capital at the time of issuance. Issued or modified warrants that do not meet all the criteria for equity classification are recorded as a liability at their initial fair value on the date of issuance and subject to remeasurement each balance sheet date with changes in the

61

---

estimated fair value of the warrants to be recognized as an unrealized gain or loss in the *audited Consolidated Statements* *consolidated statements of Operations* *operations*.

### ***Fair Value of Financial Instruments Measurements***

The Company measures certain assets and liabilities at fair value, either upon initial recognition or for subsequent accounting or reporting. The fair value of the financial instruments disclosed herein is not necessarily representative of the amount that could be realized or settled, nor does the fair value amount consider the tax consequences of realization or settlement.

In assessing the fair value of financial instruments, the Company uses a variety of methods and assumptions, which are based on estimates of market conditions and risks existing at the time. For certain instruments, including cash, accounts receivable, accounts payable, and accrued expenses, it was estimated that

The Company uses the carrying amount approximated following valuation techniques to measure fair value because for its assets and liabilities:

- Level 1: Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets and liabilities.
- Level 2: Observable inputs other than Level 1 inputs. Examples of Level 2 inputs include quoted prices in active markets for similar assets or liabilities, quoted prices for identical assets or liabilities in markets that are not active, inputs other than quoted prices that are observable such as interest rate and yield curves, and market-corroborated inputs.
- Level 3: Unobservable inputs based on the Company's assessment of the short maturities of these instruments. For assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the Company's outstanding debt, the carrying amount was higher than the estimated fair value as the contractual interest rate on the debt is lower than the current market interest rate. asset or liability.

### **Revenue Recognition**

To date, the Company has not generated any revenues from its SpaceMobile Service. The Company's former subsidiary, Nano, NanoAvionika UAB ("Nano"), generated revenue from the development and manufacture of satellite technology, and ancillary sales and services globally. Nano also sold individual satellite parts, subsystems, and software to be configured to customers' satellites, and entered into "rideshare" type agreements whereby Nano provided hosted payload services using customers' payloads integrated with Nano-owned satellite buses for scheduled launches. Accordingly, all revenue presented herein for the year ended December 31, 2022 exclusively relates to Nano's sales of goods and services. Following services until the completion of the sale of Nano on September 6, 2022, the Company does not expect to generate revenue in future periods until the initiation of its planned SpaceMobile Service.

Revenue generated from Nano's sales of goods and services was recognized in accordance with ASC 606, *- Revenue from Contracts with Customers* ("ASC 606"), and as such, revenue is recognized when a customer obtains control of promised goods or services. The Company recognized revenue for services provided over time as the Company's performance does not result in an asset with an alternative use and the Company was entitled to be compensated for performance completed to date. The Company recognized revenue for services provided over time based on an output method, under which the total value of revenue was recognized based on each contract's deliverable(s) as they were completed and when value was transferred to a customer. Certain of the Company's performance obligations did not meet the criteria for over time recognition such as satellite hardware and subsystems. In these scenarios, the Company revenue was recognized upon transfer of control of the performance obligation to the customer. The Company revenue was deferred revenue in the event all the performance obligations were not satisfied for which compensation was received. Revenue associated with unsatisfied performance obligations are contract liabilities, which were recorded within accrued expenses and other current liabilities in the audited Consolidated Balance Sheets, consolidated balance sheets. Upon the sale of Nano on September 6, 2022, there were no deferred revenues related to Nano's sale of goods and are recognized once performance obligations are satisfied. services recorded in the Company's consolidated balance sheet as of December 31, 2022.

---

Costs to obtain the Company's Nano's sales contracts were capitalized and amortized in accordance with the pattern of transfer of the underlying goods or services, and typically included commissions paid to external parties or distributors. Sales commissions were considered incremental costs in obtaining a new sales contract and thus were capitalized. Costs to fulfill the Company's Nano's sales contracts, such as the Company's overhead costs and third-party costs to manufacture, did not meet the specified capitalization criteria (i.e., did not generate or enhance resources of the Company) Nano's resources) and as such were expensed as incurred. Costs to obtain and fulfill the Company's Nano's sales contracts were immaterial as of December 31, 2022 and 2021. immaterial.

### **Cost of Sales**

Cost of sales includes included the purchase price of various products used and services performed to execute Nano's sales contracts. Cost of sales also includes operational costs to fulfil Nano customer orders, including costs for Nano employees and overhead. Following overhead until the completion of the sale of Nano on September 6, 2022, the Company does not expect to generate revenue and incur associated cost of sales in future periods until the launch of its SpaceMobile Service..

### **Engineering Services Costs**

Engineering services costs are charged to expense as incurred. Engineering services costs consist primarily of the costs cost of internal staff (such as engineers employees and consultants) associated with consultants involved in the Company's ongoing engineering efforts related to the integration, testing, design and development of the Company's BB satellites, managing the network and satellite operations centers, and indirect costs related to the assembly, integration and testing of the BB satellites, license cost, and general expenses related to AIT facilities and engineering development centers.

62

---

### **Research and Development Costs**

Research and development costs are charged to expense as incurred. Research and development costs consist principally of non-recurring development efforts activities in which the Company typically engages third-party vendors including for the design and development of the electronic componentry, software, and mechanical deployment systems to be used in the BB satellites, and materials and supplies license costs, contract services, and other outside expenses consumed in the development activities. Costs for certain research and development activities are recognized in line with based on the completion of specific tasks using information from the Company's vendors on their actual costs incurred. Payments for

these activities are based on the terms of the individual arrangements, which may differ from the pattern of costs incurred, and reflected in the financial statements as prepaid or accrued expenses. milestones that trigger payments.

### **Stock-Based Compensation**

The Company accounts for equity awards, including grants of stock options and restricted stock units, in accordance with ASC 718, *Compensation – Stock Compensation* ("ASC 718"). ASC 718 requires all equity-based payments to employees, which includes grants of employee equity awards, to be recognized in the audited Consolidated Statements consolidated statements of Operations operations based on their grant date fair values. The Company issues stock-based compensation awards to the employees, non-employees, and non-employee directors of its subsidiaries. The Company accounts for stock-based compensation for awards granted to non-employees in a similar fashion to the way it accounts for stock-based compensation awards to employees.

The Company estimates the grant date fair value of stock options granted to employees, non-employees, and non-employee members of the Board of Directors using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model. Use of the Black-Scholes model requires the Company to make assumptions with respect to the expected term of stock options, the expected volatility of the common stock consistent with the expected life of the option, risk-free interest rates and expected dividend yields of the common stock. The fair value of restricted stock units granted to employees, non-employees and non-employee members of the Board of Directors is based on the fair value of the Company's stock on the grant date. For awards that vest based solely on achievement of a service condition, the Company recognizes expense on a straight-line basis over the period during which the award holder provides such services. For awards that vest based on both service and performance conditions, the Company recognizes expense using a graded method for such awards only to the extent it believes achievement of the performance conditions are probable. The Company recognizes forfeitures as they occur and reverses any previously recognized compensation cost associated with forfeited awards. The Company accounts for the compensation associated with equity awards by offsetting expense with additional paid-in capital.

The Company's less than wholly owned subsidiary, AST LLC, issues has issued stock-based compensation awards to its employees, non-employees, and non-employee directors. The exercise of these awards would decrease decreases the Company's ownership interest in AST LLC. The Company accounts for the compensation associated with these awards similarly to the awards described above; however, the offset to the expense is recorded to noncontrolling interest rather than additional paid-in capital.

---

### **Income Taxes**

The Company follows the asset and liability method of accounting for income taxes under ASC 740, - *Income Taxes* ("ASC 740"). Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the estimated future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statements carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective tax bases. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is recognized in income in the period that included the enactment date.

In assessing the realizability of deferred tax assets, management considered whether it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. The ultimate realization of deferred tax assets is dependent upon the generation of future taxable income during the periods in which those temporary differences become deductible. Management considers the scheduled reversal of deferred tax liabilities, projected future taxable income, and tax planning strategies in making this assessment.

ASC 740 prescribes a recognition threshold and a measurement attribute for the recognition and measurement of tax positions taken or expected to be taken in a tax return. For those benefits to be recognized, a tax position must be more likely than not (i.e., a likelihood of more than 50%) to be sustained upon examination by taxing authorities. A recognized tax position is then measured at the largest amount of benefit with greater than 50% likelihood of being realized upon ultimate settlement. The Company recognizes accrued interest and penalties related to uncertain tax positions as income tax expense. There were no uncertain tax positions and no amounts accrued for interest and penalties as of **December 31, 2022** December 31, 2023 and **2021**, 2022. The Company is currently not aware of any issues under review that could result in significant payments, accruals or material deviation from its position.

63

#### **Tax Receivable Agreement**

In conjunction with the Business Combination, the Company entered into a Tax Receivable Agreement (the "TRA") with AST LLC. Pursuant to the TRA, the Company is required to pay the TRA Holders 85% of the amount of savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state, local and foreign income tax that the Company actually realizes as a result of (A) existing tax basis of certain assets of AST LLC and its subsidiaries attributable to AST LLC Common Units acquired by the Company, (B) tax basis adjustments resulting from taxable exchanges of AST LLC Common Units acquired by the Company, (C) tax deductions in respect of portions of certain payments made under the TRA, and (D) certain tax attributes that are acquired directly or indirectly by the Company pursuant to a reorganization transaction. All such payments to the TRA Holders of AST LLC are the obligations of the Company, and not that of AST LLC. As of December 31, 2022, no TRA liabilities have been recognized.

#### **Noncontrolling Interests**

The noncontrolling interests primarily represent the equity interest in AST LLC held by **holders** **members** other than the Company. In addition, AST owned 51% of and controlled both NanoAvionika UAB, a private limited liability company

organized and existing under Changes in the law of the Republic of Lithuania ("Nano Lithuania"), and NanoAvionics US LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("Nano US") up to September 6, 2022. On September 6, 2022, the noncontrolling interest was eliminated in connection with the sale of the Company's Company's ownership interest in Nano. As AST LLC while retaining control of December 31, 2021, the noncontrolling interest in Nano was approximately 49.0%. AST LLC are accounted for as equity transactions. Income or loss is attributed to the noncontrolling interests based on their contractual distribution rights, and the relative percentages of equity interest held by the Company and the other equity holders members during the period.

### **Net Loss per Share**

The Company reports both basic and diluted net income (loss) loss per share. Basic net income (loss) loss per share is calculated based on the weighted average number of shares of common stock outstanding and excludes the dilutive effect of warrants, stock options, and other types of convertible securities. Diluted net income (loss) loss per share is calculated based on the weighted average number of shares of common stock outstanding and the dilutive effect of stock options, warrants and other types of convertible securities are included in the calculation. Dilutive securities are excluded from the diluted net loss per share calculation in periods where the Company reports a net loss as such dilutive securities have an anti-dilutive effect on net loss per share.

### **Recently Adopted Accounting Pronouncements**

In May 2021, July 2023, the FASB issued ASU 2021-04, Earnings Per Share 2023-03, Presentation of Financial Statements (Topic 260) 205), Debt-Modifications Income Statement – Reporting Comprehensive Income (Topic 220), Distinguishing Liabilities from Equity (Topic 480), Equity (Topic 505), and Extinguishments (Subtopic 470-50), Compensation-Stock Compensation – Stock Compensation (Topic 718), which amends or supersedes various SEC paragraphs within the codification to conform to past announcements and Derivatives and Hedging-Contracts in Entity's Own Equity (Subtopic 815-40): Issuer's Accounting for Certain Modifications or Exchanges of Freestanding Equity-Classified Written Call Options (a consensus of guidance issued by the FASB Emerging Issues Task Force). The guidance clarifies certain aspects of the current guidance to promote consistency among reporting of an issuer's accounting for modifications or exchanges of freestanding equity-classified written call options (for example, warrants) that remain equity classified after modification or exchange. SEC. The amendments in this update ASU reflect alignment to Staff Accounting Bulletin No. 120 ("SAB 120") that was issued by the SEC in November 2021. SAB 120 provides guidance to entities issuing share-based awards shortly before announcing material, nonpublic information. The guidance indicates that entities should consider such material nonpublic information to adjust the observable market if the effect of the release of the material nonpublic information is expected to affect the share price and the share-based awards are non-routine in nature. This ASU was effective for all entities for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2021, including interim periods within those fiscal years. Early immediately, and the adoption is permitted for all entities, including adoption in an interim period. The Company adopted of this ASU 2021-04 on January 1, 2022. The adoption did not have a material impact on its audited the Company's consolidated financial statements.

### **Future Adoption of Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements**

In November 2021, 2023, the FASB issued ASU 2021-10, *Government Assistance* 2023-07, *Segment Reporting (Topic 832)* 280, *Improvements to Reportable Segment Disclosures by Business Entities*, that requires a public entity to disclose significant segment expenses and other segment items on an annual and interim basis and provide in interim periods all disclosures about *Government Assistance*, a reportable segment's profit or loss and assets that are currently required annually. It requires a public entity to increase also disclose the transparency of government assistance including the disclosure title and position of the types of assistance an entity receives, an entity's method of accounting for government assistance, and the effect of the assistance on an entity's financial statements. Chief Operating Decision Maker. The guidance in this update ASU is effective for all entities for annual the Company on January 1, 2024, and interim periods within fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2021 January 1, 2025. Early adoption is permitted for all entities. The permitted. A public entity should apply the amendments are to be applied prospectively in this ASU retrospectively to all transactions within prior periods presented in the scope of the amendments that are reflected in financial statements at the date of initial application and new transactions that are entered into after the date of initial application or, retrospectively to those transactions. statements. The Company adopted is currently evaluating the potential impact of adopting this ASU 2021-10 on January 1, 2022. The adoption did not have a material impact on its disclosures, consolidated financial statements.

90

---

In December 2023, the FASB issued ASU 2023-09, *Income Taxes (Topic 740), Improvements to Income Tax Disclosures*. ASU 2023-09 requires a public business entity (PBE) to disclose, on an annual basis, a tabular rate reconciliation using both percentages and currency amounts, broken out into specified categories with certain reconciling items further broken out by nature and jurisdiction to the extent those items exceed a specified threshold. In addition, all entities are required to disclose income taxes paid, net of refunds received disaggregated by federal, state/local, and foreign and by jurisdiction if the amount is at least 5% of total income tax payments, net of refunds received. The ASU is effective for the Company on January 1, 2025. Early adoption is permitted. The Company is currently evaluating the potential impact of adopting this ASU on its consolidated financial statements.

All other new accounting pronouncements issued, but not yet effective or adopted, have been deemed to be not relevant to the Company and, accordingly, are not expected to have a material impact once adopted.

### 3. **Business Combination**

On April 6, 2021, the Company completed the Business Combination with AST LLC pursuant to the Equity Purchase Agreement. Pursuant to ASC 805 – Business Combinations (“ASC 805”), for financial accounting and reporting purposes, AST LLC was deemed the accounting acquirer and the Company was treated as the accounting acquiree, and the Business Combination was accounted for as a reverse recapitalization. Accordingly, the Business Combination was treated as the equivalent of AST LLC

issuing stock ("AST LLC Common Units") for the net assets of NPA, accompanied by a recapitalization. Under this method of accounting, the pre-Business Combination consolidated financial statements of the Company are the historical financial statements of AST LLC. The net assets of NPA were stated at fair value, with no goodwill or other intangible assets recorded in accordance with U.S. GAAP, and are consolidated with AST LLC's financial statements on the Closing Date. As a result of the Business Combination with the Company, the AST LLC Series A and Series B convertible preferred stock were converted to AST LLC Common Units. The shares and net income (loss) available to holders of the Company's common stock, prior to the Business Combination, have been retroactively restated as shares reflecting the exchange ratio established in the Equity Purchase Agreement.

In connection with the Business Combination, the Company entered into subscription agreements with certain investors (the "Private Investment in Public Entity Investors", or "PIPE Investors"), whereby it issued 23,000,000 Class A shares of common stock at \$10.00 per share (the "Private Placement Shares") for an aggregate purchase price of \$230.0 million (the "Private Placement"), which closed simultaneously with the consummation of the Business Combination.

On the Closing Date of the Business Combination, the Company completed the acquisition of AST LLC and in return AST LLC and the Existing Equityholders received (i) \$416.9 million in cash, net of transaction expenses, (ii) 51.6 million shares of Class B Common Stock, and (iii) 78.2 million shares of Class C Common Stock. In connection with the Business Combination, the Company incurred direct and incremental costs of approximately \$45.7 million related to the equity issuance, consisting primarily of investment banking, legal, accounting and other professional fees, which were recorded as a reduction of additional paid-in capital in the accompanying audited Consolidated Balance Sheets.

The shares of non-economic Class B and Class C Common Stock of the Company entitle each share to one vote and ten votes per share, respectively. The non-economic Class B and Class C shares were issued to the Existing Equityholders to maintain the established voting percentage of the Company, as determined in the Equity Purchase Agreement.

As a result of the Business Combination, the Company, organized as a C corporation, owns an equity interest in AST LLC in what is commonly referred to as an "Up-C" structure. AST LLC is treated as a partnership for U.S. federal and state income tax purposes. Also, the Company had a controlling ownership interest in its former subsidiary, Nano, until September 6, 2022, that is subject to foreign income taxes and is also treated as a partnership for U.S. federal and state and local taxes. Accordingly, for U.S. federal and state income tax purposes, all income, losses, and other tax attributes pass through to the members' income tax returns, and no U.S. federal and state and local provision for income taxes has been recorded for these entities in the audited consolidated financial statements. Certain foreign wholly-owned entities are taxed as corporations in the jurisdictions in which they operate, and accruals for such taxes are included in the audited consolidated financial statements.

As a result of the Up-C structure, the noncontrolling interest is held by the Existing Equityholders who retained 71% of the economic ownership percentage of AST LLC. The noncontrolling interest is classified as permanent equity within the audited Consolidated Balance Sheets as the Company, acting through the redemption election committee of the Company's Board of Directors (the "Redemption Election Committee"), may only elect to settle a redemption request in cash if the cash delivered in the exchange is limited to the cash proceeds to be received from a new permanent equity offering through issuance of Class A Common Stock. As of December 31, 2022, the noncontrolling interest percentage in AST LLC was approximately 64.2%.

In conjunction with the Business Combination, the Company also entered into the TRA with AST LLC. Pursuant to the TRA, the Company is required to pay the Existing Equityholders 85% of the amount of savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state, local and foreign income tax that the Company actually realizes as a result of (A) existing tax basis of certain assets of AST LLC and its subsidiaries attributable to the AST LLC Common Units, (B) tax basis adjustments resulting from taxable exchanges of AST LLC Common Units acquired by the Company, (C) tax deductions in respect of portions of certain payments made under the TRA, and (D) certain tax attributes that are acquired directly or indirectly by the Company pursuant to a reorganization transaction. All such payments to the Existing Equityholders of AST LLC are the obligations of the Company, and not that of AST LLC. As of December 31, 2022, no TRA liabilities have been recognized.

The Company recorded a net deferred tax asset for the difference between the book value and tax basis of the Company's investment in AST LLC at the time of the Business Combination. The Company has assessed the realizability of their deferred tax assets and in that analysis has considered the relevant positive and negative evidence available to determine whether it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will be realized. As a result, the Company has recorded a full valuation allowance against its deferred tax asset resulting from the Business Combination.

65

#### 4.3. Fair Value Measurement

The Company follows the guidance in ASC 820 - *Fair Value Measurement* ("ASC 820"), for its financial assets and liabilities that are re-measured and reported at fair value at each reporting period, and non-financial assets and liabilities that are re-measured and reported at fair value at least annually.

The fair value of the Company's financial assets and liabilities reflects management's estimate of amounts that the Company would have received in connection with the sale of the assets or paid in connection with the transfer of the liabilities in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. In connection with measuring the fair value of its assets and liabilities, the Company seeks to maximize the use of observable inputs (market data obtained from independent sources) and to minimize the use of unobservable inputs (internal assumptions about how market participants would price assets and liabilities). The following fair value hierarchy is used to classify assets and liabilities based on the observable inputs and unobservable inputs used in order to value the assets and liabilities:

- Level 1: Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities. An active market for an asset or liability market in which transactions for the asset or liability occur with sufficient frequency and volume to provide price information on an ongoing basis.
- Level 2: Observable inputs other than Level 1 inputs. Examples of Level 2 inputs include quoted prices in active markets for similar assets or liabilities and quoted prices for identical assets or liabilities in markets that are not active.
- Level 3: Unobservable inputs based on the Company's assessment of the assumptions that market participants would use in pricing the asset or liability.

The Company's financial assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis as of December 31, 2022 and December 31, 2021 were as follows (in thousands):

December 31, 2022	As of December 31, 2023
-------------------	-------------------------

	Level			Level		
	Level 1	2	3	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
<b>Assets:</b>						
Cash equivalents	\$ 230,651	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 69,661	\$ -	\$ -
Total assets measured at fair value	\$ 230,651	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 69,661	\$ -	\$ -
	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<b>Liabilities:</b>						
Public warrant liability	\$ 22,864	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 18,707	\$ -	\$ -
Private placement warrant liability	-	16,082	-	-	11,253	-
Total liabilities measured at fair value	\$ 22,864	\$ 16,082	\$ -	\$ 18,707	\$ 11,253	\$ -
	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>

	December 31, 2021			As of December 31, 2022		
	Level					
	Level 1	Level 2	3	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
<b>Assets:</b>						
Cash equivalents	\$ 314,747	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 230,651	\$ -	\$ -
Total assets measured at fair value	\$ 314,747	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 230,651	\$ -	\$ -
	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<b>Liabilities:</b>						
Public warrant liability	\$ 34,151	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 22,864	\$ -	\$ -
Private placement warrant liability	-	23,911	-	-	16,082	-
Total liabilities measured at fair value	\$ 34,151	\$ 23,911	\$ -	\$ 22,864	\$ 16,082	\$ -
	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>

As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022, respectively, the Company had \$239.3 88.1 million and \$324.5 239.3 million of cash and cash equivalents and restricted cash, of which \$230.7 69.7 million and \$314.7 230.7 million, respectively, is classified as cash equivalents, which consists principally of short-term money market funds with original maturities of 90 days or less. As of December 31, 2023, restricted cash of \$2.5 million represents a deposit into an interest reserve escrow account in accordance with the requirements under the Atlas Credit Agreement defined in Note 8: Debt, and a deposit against the bank guaranty issued to the landlord for lease of a property. As of

December 31, 2022, restricted cash of \$0.7 million represented deposits against the bank guaranty issued to the landlord for lease of a property. For certain instruments, including cash, accounts payable, and accrued expenses, it was estimated that the carrying amount approximated fair value because of the short maturities of these instruments.

Warrant liabilities are comprised of both publicly issued warrants ("Public Warrants") and private placement warrants ("Private Placement Warrants"), exercisable for shares of Class A Common Stock of the Company. Warrant liabilities are documented in greater detail at Note 12:9: Warrant Liabilities. As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022, the Public Warrants are classified as Level 1 due to the use of an observable market quote in an active market under the ticker "ASTSW".

66

The Private Placement Warrants are valued using a Black-Scholes-Merton Model. As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022, the Private Placement Warrants are classified as Level 2 as the transfer of Private Placement Warrants to anyone outside of a small group of individuals who are permitted transferees would result in the Private Placement Warrants having substantially the same terms as the Public Warrants. For this reason, the Company determined that the volatility of each Private Placement Warrant is equivalent to that of each Public Warrant.

91

The Company's Black-Scholes-Merton model to value Private Placement Warrants required the use of the following subjective assumption inputs:

- The risk-free interest rate assumption was initially based on a weighted average of the three- and five-year U.S. Treasury rate, which was commensurate with the contractual term of the Warrants, which expire on the earlier of (i) five years after the completion of the initial business combination and (ii) upon redemption or liquidation. As of December 31, 2023, the risk-free rate assumption was based on the two-and three-year U.S. Treasury rates as the estimated time to expiration was 2.26 years (compared to an estimated time to expiration of 3.26 years as of December 31, 2022). An increase in the risk-free interest rate, in isolation, would result in an increase in the fair value measurement of the warrant liabilities and vice versa.
- The expected volatility assumption was based on the implied volatility of the Company's Public Warrants, which as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 was 109.6 80.4% and 75.6 109.6%, respectively.

#### 5.4. Other Assets

Other current assets consisted of the following at December 31, 2022 and December 31, 2021 (in thousands):

December 31, 2022

December 31, 2021

	<b>December 31, 2022</b>	<b>December 31, 2021</b>
Advances to suppliers	\$ 22,947	\$ 3,073
VAT receivable	1,673	1,580
Others	334	197
<b>Total other current assets</b>	<b>\$ 24,954</b>	<b>\$ 4,850</b>

Other non-current assets consisted of the following at December 31, 2022 and December 31, 2021 (in thousands):

	<b>December 31, 2022</b>	<b>December 31, 2021</b>
Launch deposits	\$ 14,750	\$ -
Others	1,652	559
<b>Total other non-current assets</b>	<b>\$ 16,402</b>	<b>\$ 559</b>

	<b>As of December 31,</b>	
	<b>2023</b>	<b>2022</b>
Advances to suppliers	\$ 12,793	\$ 22,947
VAT receivable	1,152	1,673
Others	249	334
<b>Total other current assets</b>	<b>\$ 14,194</b>	<b>\$ 24,954</b>

## 6.5. Property and Equipment

Property and equipment, net consisted of the following at December 31, 2022 and December 31, 2021 (in thousands):

	<b>As of December 31,</b>	
	<b>2022</b>	<b>2021</b>
Land	\$ 1,350	\$ 1,350
Buildings	10,268	-
Computers, software, and equipment	3,153	2,810
Leasehold improvements	8,197	6,416
Satellite antennas	5,142	2,996
Lab, assembly, and integration equipment	13,657	10,301
Others <sup>(1)</sup>	1,707	1,345
Property and equipment, gross	\$ 43,474	\$ 25,218
Accumulated depreciation	(6,979)	(3,592)
Construction in progress		
BB satellite materials	10,721	-
Other <sup>(2)</sup>	6,696	6,701

Property and equipment, net	\$ 53,912	\$ 28,327
BlueWalker 3 satellite - construction in progress	\$ 92,077	\$ 67,615
Total property and equipment, net	\$ 145,989	\$ 95,942

67

	As of December 31,	
	2023	2022
Land	\$ 1,350	\$ 1,350
Buildings	14,555	10,268
Leasehold improvements	9,111	8,197
Satellite in orbit <sup>(1)</sup>	92,464	-
Lab, assembly, and integration equipment	31,957	13,657
Satellite antenna	7,188	5,142
Computer hardware and software	11,112	3,153
Other	1,230	1,707
Construction in progress		
BlueWalker 3 test satellite <sup>(1)</sup>	-	92,077
Satellite materials, satellites under construction, and advance launch payments <sup>(2)</sup>	125,428	10,721
Other	5,256	6,696
Total property and equipment, gross	\$ 299,651	\$ 152,968
Accumulated depreciation and amortization	\$ (61,173)	\$ (6,979)
Total property and equipment, net	\$ 238,478	\$ 145,989

(1) Includes vehicles, furniture and fixtures. BlueWalker 3 test satellite was determined to be ready for its intended use on April 25, 2023 and fixtures were reclassified from Construction in progress to Satellite in orbit as of that date and a phased array test facility was depreciated over its expected remaining useful life of approximately 16 months.

(2) Includes costs incurred for acquiring Advance launch payments, which were included in other non-current assets as of December 31, 2022, reclassified to property and constructing assembly and testing facilities, assembly and test equipment and ground infrastructure equipment not placed in service as of June 30, 2023.

Depreciation expense for the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 was approximately \$4.6 million and \$2.7 million, respectively.

92

## 7.6. Leases

The Company and its subsidiaries are lessees under various operating leases for certain office space, manufacturing facilities and equipment. The Company's leases have established fixed payment terms which are subject to annual rent increases throughout the term of each lease agreement. The Company's lease agreements have varying non-cancellable rental periods which include options for the Company to extend portions of its lease terms and have similar terms in which they may terminate the lease prior to the end date but must provide advanced notice.

The Company recognizes right-of-use assets and lease liabilities associated with lease agreements with an initial term of 12 months or greater, while lease agreements with an initial term of 12 months or less are not recorded in the Company's **audited Consolidated Balance Sheets**, **consolidated balance sheets**. When reasonably certain that renewal options will be exercised, the Company includes lease payments associated with such options, including those that are exercisable at its discretion, in the measurement of its operating leases assets and liabilities. **Where implicit rates are not included in the lease agreement, the Company determines the incremental borrowing rate at lease commencement date based on various factors, including the lowest grade of debt available in the marketplace for the same term as the associated lease.**

### Midland Lease

On November 13, 2018, AST LLC entered into both an Economic Development Agreement (the "EDA") and a sublease agreement with Midland Development Corporation. The premise of the EDA was to create jobs in the Midland, Texas area, as well as to have AST LLC improve the land, office and hangar spaces at the leased facility located at the Midland International Air & Space Port in Midland, Texas. The term of the lease commenced on November 21, 2018 and extends through November 20, 2033. Pursuant to the agreement, the base rental payments for the first five years **will be** abated, **provided that** as the Company **prepays** prepaid the rent in each period and **achieves** achieved an increasing level of financial commitments, measured annually on March 31st of each of the first five years of the lease. **These commitments include** 1) the total number of full-time jobs and the related annual payroll costs and 2) cumulative capital investments in personal property and improvements to the existing land/structures. The Company **can qualify** recognized the lease reimbursements as an offset to rent expense for the related reimbursable month. In addition, the Company qualified for an additional five years (years six through ten of the term) of abatements which **are** **were** contingent upon the Company achieving its commitments through the first five years of the lease and maintaining or exceeding those year five commitment levels in years six through year ten of the term. **These commitments include** 1) the total number of full-time jobs and the related annual payroll costs and 2) cumulative capital investments in personal property and improvements to the existing land/structures. The Company recognizes the lease reimbursements as an offset to rent expense for the related reimbursable month when the contingency is probable of being resolved.

The table below sets forth information regarding the Company's lease agreements with an initial term of greater than 12 months (dollars in thousands):

	Year ended December 31,		Year ended December 31,	
	2022	2021	2023	2022
Operating lease right-of-use assets, net	\$ 7,671	\$ 7,991	\$ 13,221	\$ 7,671
Operating lease liabilities	\$ 7,768	\$ 8,159	\$ 13,368	\$ 7,768
Weighted-average remaining lease term (in years)	9.3	9.7		
Weighted-average discount rate <sup>(1)</sup>	13.1 %	13.4 %		
Weighted-average lease term (in years)			8.4	9.3
Weighted-average discount rate			13.2 %	13.1 %

(1) As the Company's leases do not provide an implicit rate, the Company derives its incremental borrowing rate from information available at the commencement date in determining the present value of future lease payments. To estimate incremental borrowing rates, the Company considers various factors, including the lowest grade of debt available in the marketplace for the same term as the associated lease(s).

68

The Company generally recognizes lease costs associated with its operating leases on a straight-line basis over the lease term. The table below sets forth information regarding the Company's lease costs, which are included as general and administrative expenses in the Company's **audited Consolidated Statements** **consolidated statements** of **Operations** **operations** for the periods presented (in thousands):

	Year ended December 31,		Year ended December 31,	
	2022	2021	2023	2022
Short-term operating lease expense	\$ 1,191	\$ 440	\$ 2,159	\$ 1,191
Operating lease expense	939	563	2,046	939
Total lease expense	\$ 2,130	\$ 1,003	\$ 4,205	\$ 2,130

93

As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, the maturities of the Company's operating lease liabilities were as follows (in thousands):

2023	\$ 1,632
------	----------

2024		1,543	\$ 3,078
2025		1,546	2,909
2026		1,563	2,541
2027		1,348	2,326
2028			2,269
Thereafter		6,011	8,867
Total lease payments		13,643	21,990
Less effects of discounting		(5,875)	(8,622)
Present value of lease liabilities	\$	7,768	\$ 13,368

The above operating lease payments exclude \$9.9 million of required minimum lease payments for lease agreements executed but not commenced, as the Company has not received control of the leased property as of December 31, 2022. Included in the Company's audited Consolidated Statements consolidated statements of Cash Flows cash flows under operating activities for the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 was \$0.82.0 million and \$0.50.8 million, respectively, of cash paid for amounts included in the measurement of lease liabilities.

## 8.7. Goodwill

The change in the carrying amount of goodwill for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021 is summarized as follows (in thousands):

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Balance at beginning of the period	\$ 3,641	\$ 3,912
Translation adjustments	(470)	(271)
Deconsolidation of Nano	(3,171)	-
Balance at end of the period	\$ -	\$ 3,641

## 9. Accrued Expenses and Other Current Liabilities

Accrued expenses and other current liabilities consisted of the following at December 31, 2022 and 2021 (in thousands):

	As of December 31,		As of December 31,	
	2022		2023	
	2022	2021	2023	2022
Salaries, wages and benefits	\$ 2,357	\$ 2,983	\$ 2,338	\$ 2,357
Research and development	3,855	1,496	5,644	3,855
Other construction in progress	1,796	1,260		
Property and equipment			8,807	1,796
Other professional services			2,429	1,819
Deferred other income	2,499	-	2,246	2,499

Others	2,638	1,730	2,462	577
Total accrued expenses and other current liabilities	<u>\$ 13,145</u>	<u>\$ 7,469</u>	<u>\$ 23,926</u>	<u>\$ 12,903</u>

69

## 10.8 Debt

### Long-term debt

Long-term debt consists of the following (in thousands):

	December 31, 2022	December 31, 2021
Term Loan	\$ 5,000	\$ 5,000
Less: current portion	(242)	-
<b>Total long-term debt</b>	<b>\$ 4,758</b>	<b>\$ 5,000</b>

	As of December 31,	
	2023	2022
Senior secured credit facility <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 52,023	\$ -
Capital equipment loan	15,000	-
Term loan	4,758	5,000
<b>Total debt</b>	<b>71,781</b>	<b>5,000</b>
Less: current portion of long-term debt	(252)	(242)
Less: unamortized debt issuance costs <sup>(1)</sup>	(12,277)	-
<b>Long-term debt, net of issuance costs</b>	<b>\$ 59,252</b>	<b>\$ 4,758</b>

(1) Includes estimated exit fee of \$3.5 million due at maturity.

The aggregate future contractual maturities of long-term debt were as follows as of December 31, 2023 (in thousands):

Year	As of December 31, 2023
2024	\$ 252
2025	2,920
2026	55,125
2027	2,466
2028	5,363
Thereafter	5,655
<b>Total principal</b>	<b>\$ 71,781</b>

As of December 31, 2023 and December 31, 2022, the aggregate fair value of the Company's debt was \$68.7 million and \$4.3 million, respectively. The fair value of the debt has been determined under the discounted cash flow method using significant inputs derived from, or corroborated by, observable market data (Level 2 inputs).

Debt discount and issuance costs are comprised of costs incurred in connection with debt issuance and are presented in the consolidated balance sheets as a deduction to the carrying amount of the associated debt and amortized using the effective interest method to interest expense over the term of the debt. During the year ended December 31, 2023 and 2022, the Company recognized \$4.5 million and \$0.2 million of interest expense related to the debt noted above, respectively. The interest expense included amortization of debt issuance costs of \$1.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2023. Interest expense is included in interest income (expense), net in the accompanying consolidated statements of operations.

As of December 31, 2023, the Company was in compliance with all debt covenants requirements.

*Senior secured credit facility*

On August 14, 2023, AST LLC entered into a senior secured term loan credit agreement with ACP Post Oak Credit II LLC as administrative agent and collateral agent and Atlas Credit Partners, LLC ("Atlas") as lender, providing for a principal loan commitment of up to \$100.0 million (the "Atlas Credit Agreement"), of which \$48.5 million was borrowed upon closing ("Senior secured credit facility loan"). In addition, a two-year collateral protection insurance policy was issued to the lenders and a cash premium based on a single digit percentage of the amount drawn was paid to the insurance provider thereunder (the "Cash Premium"). An additional amount of up to \$51.5 million may be borrowed only to the extent the Company raises additional capital through equity raises and obtains an additional collateral protection insurance policy such that the Company has insurance coverage equal to at least the amount of borrowings under the facility.

The initial borrowing of \$48.5 million accrues interest at a fixed rate equal to the three-month secured overnight financing rate ("SOFR") as of the closing date plus 9.625% per annum equal to 14.75% (the "Atlas Fixed Rate") payable on the last business day of each fiscal quarter. The borrowing amounts are payable at maturity on August 14, 2026 and are subject to mandatory prepayments upon the occurrence of certain specified events.

Upon closing, the Company received proceeds of \$37.2 million, net of debt issuance costs of \$9.5 million and deposit of \$1.8 million into an interest reserve escrow account. Debt issuance costs of \$9.5 million consist of agent fees, offering expenses, and two years of cash premium. Debt issuance costs also includes an estimated exit fee of \$3.5 million equal to \$2.8 million plus 1.50% of any undrawn commitments payable upon maturity. Total debt issuance costs are accreted to interest expense over the term of the Atlas Credit Agreement using the effective interest method. The net proceeds were and are expected to continue to be used for general corporate purposes as permitted under the Atlas Credit Agreement.

Borrowings are secured by substantially all of the assets of the Company and its subsidiaries other than the assets of certain excluded subsidiaries. The Atlas Credit Agreement contains customary affirmative and negative covenants, requires the Company to maintain certain levels of liquidity, limits the Company's ability to incur additional indebtedness, make

restricted payments (including cash dividends on common stock), and sell or otherwise dispose of its assets, among other restrictions.

The Company has the option to prepay all or part of the outstanding principal balance of the Senior secured credit facility loan. Any repayment of principal prior to the eighteenth-month anniversary of closing will be subject to a call premium equal to the present value of all interest payments due through the eighteenth-month anniversary, calculated using a discount rate equal to the applicable treasury rate as of the repayment date plus 50 basis points.

The amount borrowed and outstanding shall be mandatorily repaid in the case of certain events as specified in the Atlas Credit Agreement. Specifically, in the event of a Change in Control, Atlas has the right to immediately redeem all outstanding borrowings at a price of 101% of the outstanding principal amount plus the call premium and accrued and unpaid cash interest. This mandatory prepayment qualifies as an embedded derivative requiring bifurcation. The Company determined the fair value of the mandatory prepayment derivative feature is immaterial.

#### *Capital equipment loan*

On August 14, 2023, AST LLC and certain other subsidiaries of the Company entered into a loan agreement with Lone Star State Bank of West Texas ("Lone Star") as lender, providing for \$15.0 million principal term loan commitment secured by certain real property fixtures and equipment in one of the Company's Texas facilities (the "Lone Star Loan Agreement") of which the entire term loan amount was borrowed on September 19, 2023. The Lone Star Loan Agreement includes certain customary affirmative and negative covenants. The net proceeds were and are expected to continue to be used for general corporate purposes.

95

---

Borrowings accrue interest at the Prime Rate plus 0.75%, subject to a ceiling rate. As of December 31, 2023, the effective interest rate on the borrowings is 9.48% per annum. Interest payments are due and payable on a monthly basis. Interest payments began in September 2023 and principal payments will begin in April 2025. Principal repayments are thereafter due in 48 equal monthly installments until January 2029, the maturity date of the loan. In connection with the Lone Star Loan Agreement, the Company deposited a cash balance of \$15.0 million in the Lone Star Bank Money Market Fund. This cash balance will be converted to restricted cash if the Company fails to maintain a consolidated balance of cash and cash equivalents of at least \$75.0 million. This restricted cash will be used to offset against the term loan obligations if the Company fails to maintain a consolidated balance of cash and cash equivalents of at least \$50.0 million.

#### *Term loan*

On December 8, 2021, the Company's subsidiary, AST & Science Texas, LLC, executed an agreement to purchase real property, including offices, industrial warehouse buildings and equipment for a total purchase price of \$8.0 million. In connection with the purchase, AST & Science Texas, LLC entered into an agreement with Lone Star State Bank of West Texas (the "Credit" "Term Loan Credit Agreement") to issue a term promissory note (the "Term Loan") for \$5.0 million with a maturity date of December 8, 2028 that is secured by the property.

Borrowings under the Term Loan bear interest at a fixed rate equal to 4.20% per annum until December 2026, and from December 2026 until December 2028 at a fixed rate per annum equal to 4.20% subject to adjustment if the index rate as defined in the **Term Loan** Credit Agreement is greater than 4.20%. Interest is payable monthly in arrears commencing in January 2022. Thereafter, outstanding principal and accrued interest will be due and payable in monthly installments of \$40,000, commencing in January 2023 and continuing until November 2028, with the final remaining balance of unpaid principal and interest due and payable in December 2028. **As of December 31, 2022 and December 31, 2021, accrued interest payable in connection with this Term Loan was immaterial.**

**As of December 31, 2021, the carrying amount of the Term Loan approximated its fair value as the contractual interest rate for the Term Loan was representative of the then market interest rate. As of December 31, 2022, the estimated fair value of the Term Loan is \$4.3 million due to current higher market interest rates as compared to the contractual interest rate for the Term Loan. The fair value of the Term Loan is classified as Level 2 in the fair value hierarchy as the fair value is determined based on the market participants' view of the yield on a similar loan.**

**Annual future principal payments due on the Term Loan as of December 31, 2022 are as follows (in thousands):**

<b>Fiscal Years Ending</b>	<b>Amount</b>
2023	\$ 242
2024	252
2025	263
2026	274
2027	286
Thereafter	3,683
<b>Total principal</b>	<b>\$ 5,000</b>

#### ***Nano Business Credit Agreement***

On December 8, 2021, the Company's former subsidiary, Nano, entered into an agreement with AB SEB Bank (the "Lender") pursuant to which the Lender agreed to provide up to \$0.4 million (the "Business Credit") to fund certain capital expenditures. Borrowings under the agreement bore interest at a rate per annum equal to the EURIBOR plus 3.00%. Upon closing of the Nano Share Sale on September 6, 2022, the full outstanding balance under the Business Credit Agreement was repaid by the acquiror in accordance with the sale and purchase agreement. Refer to Note 16 for further information on the sale of Nano.

## **11. Revenue**

### ***Disaggregation of Revenue***

The Company's former subsidiary, Nano, recognized revenue related to sales of manufactured small satellites and their components, as well as launch-related services. This was the Company's only source of revenue during the period up and until the sale of Nano on September 6, 2022. Nano's results of operations were included through September 6, 2022, at which point Nano was

deconsolidated (refer to Note 16: Nano Sale for further information). Revenue recognized over time versus revenue recognized upon transfer during the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021 was as follows (in thousands):

	<b>Year ended December 31,</b>	
	<b>2022</b>	<b>2021</b>
Revenue from performance obligations recognized over time	\$ 12,491	\$ 8,400
Revenue from performance obligations recognized at point-in-time transfer	1,334	4,005
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 13,825</b>	<b>\$ 12,405</b>

#### **Contract Balances**

Contract assets relate to the Company's conditional right to consideration for its completed performance under the contract. As of December 31, 2022 and 2021, the Company had no material contract assets. Contract liabilities relate to payments received in advance of performance under the contract. Contract liabilities (i.e., deferred revenue) are recognized as revenue as (or when) the Company performs under the contract. The following table reflects the change in contract liabilities for the periods indicated (in thousands):

	<b>Year ended December 31,</b>	
	<b>2022</b>	
Beginning Balance	\$ 6,636	
Revenue recognized that was included in the contract liability at the beginning of the year	(2,426)	
Increase, excluding amounts recognized as revenue during the period	3,899	
Deconsolidation of Nano	(8,109)	
<b>Ending Balance</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>-</b>

#### **12.9. Warrant Liabilities**

Warrant liabilities are comprised of both Public Warrants and Private Placement Warrants. Each whole Public Warrant entitles the registered holder to purchase one whole share of Class A common stock at a price of \$11.50 per share. Pursuant to the warrant agreement, a holder of Public Warrants may exercise its warrants only for a whole number of shares of Class A common stock.

This means that only a whole warrant may be exercised at any given time by a warrant holder. The Public Warrants expire on April 6, 2026, five years after the Business Combination, at 5:00 p.m., New York City time, or earlier upon redemption or liquidation. The Company may redeem the Public Warrants under the following conditions:

- In whole and not in part;
- At a price of \$0.01 per warrant;
- Upon not less than 30 days' prior written notice of redemption (the "30-day redemption period") to each warrant holder; and

- If, and only if, the reported last sale price of the Class A Common Stock equals or exceeds \$18.00 per share for any 20 trading days within a 30-trading day period ending three business days before the Company sends the notice of redemption to the warrant holders.

The redemption criteria discussed above prevent a redemption call unless there is at the time of the call a significant premium to the Public Warrant exercise price. If the foregoing conditions are satisfied and the Company issues a notice of redemption of the warrants, each Public Warrant holder will be entitled to exercise its warrant prior to the scheduled redemption date. However, the price of the Class A common stock may fall below the \$18.00 redemption trigger price (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) as well as the \$11.50 warrant exercise price after the redemption notice is issued.

The Private Placement Warrants are identical to the Public Warrants, except that the Private Placement Warrants are exercisable on a cashless basis and are non-redeemable so long as they are held by the initial purchasers or their permitted transferees. If the Private Placement Warrants are held by someone other than the initial purchasers or their permitted transferees, the Private Placement Warrants will be redeemable by the Company and exercisable by such holders on the same basis as the Public Warrants.

71

---

During the year ended December 31, 2022, 1,200 Public Warrants were exercised at a price of \$11.50 per share, resulting in cash proceeds of approximately \$13,800 and the issuance of 1,200 shares of Class A common stock. In addition, 50,000 Private Placement Warrants were converted to Public Warrants. During the year ended December 31, 2023, no Public Warrants were

96

---

exercised and no Private Placement Warrants were converted to Public Warrants. At December 31, 2022, December 31, 2023 and 2022 there were 11,547,600 Public Warrants and 6,050,000 Private Placement Warrants outstanding. As of December 31, 2021, there were 11,498,800 Public Warrants and 6,100,000 Private Placement Warrants outstanding. As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022, the Company recorded warrant liabilities of \$38.9 30.0 million and \$58.1 38.9 million in the audited Consolidated Balance Sheets, consolidated balance sheets, respectively. For the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, the Company recognized a gain of \$19.1 9.0 million and \$15.8 19.1 million, respectively, on the change in the fair value of the warrant liabilities in the audited Consolidated Statements, consolidated statements of Operations, operations.

## 13.10 Commitments and Contingencies

### **Purchase Commitments**

As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, the Company had purchase commitments of approximately \$49.5 13.5 million, primarily related to R&D programs, capital improvements and procurement of BB satellite components, components, R&D programs, and capital improvements.

### **Legal Proceedings**

The Company is subject to various legal proceedings and claims that have arisen in the ordinary course of business and that have not been fully adjudicated. In the opinion of management, there was not at least a party reasonable possibility the Company may have incurred a material loss, or a material loss in excess of any recorded accrual, with respect to any material loss contingencies. However, the outcome of litigation and does not have contingency reserves established is inherently uncertain. Therefore, although management considers the likelihood of such an outcome to be remote, if one or more of these legal matters were resolved against the Company in a reporting period for any litigation liabilities as amounts in excess of December 31, 2022 and 2021. management's expectations, the Company's consolidated financial statements for that reporting period could be materially adversely affected.

#### **Delaware Section 205 Petition Class Action Litigations**

On April 1, 2021, the stockholders of New Providence Acquisition Corp. ("NPA"), the predecessor to the Company, voted in favor of approving the proposal to amend and restate the Company's certificate of incorporation (the "Charter Proposal"). A recent ruling by the Delaware Court of Chancery introduced uncertainty as Following books and records demands pursuant to whether Section 242(b)(2) of the Delaware General Corporation Law (the "DGCL") would 8 Del. C. § 220, two stockholders have required the Charter Proposal to be approved by separate votes of the majority of the then-outstanding shares of Class A common stock and Class B common stock.

The Company had been proceeding with the understanding that the Charter Proposal and the amended and restated certificate of incorporation are valid. In light of this ruling, however, and to resolve potential uncertainty with respect to the Company's capital structure, on February 16, 2023, the Company filed a petition putative class action complaints in the Delaware Court of Chancery pursuant to Section 205 against the Company, certain current and former directors of the DGCL seeking (i) Company and its predecessor entity and manager, New Providence Acquisition Corp. and New Providence Management LLC, and Abel Avellan, alleging claims of breach of fiduciary duties and aiding and abetting such breaches, relating to the validation de-SPAC merger. The first of those complaints, Taylor v. Coleman, et al. (C.A. No. 2023-1292), was filed on December 27, 2023, and the second, Drulias v. New Providence Management LLC, et al., was filed on March 29, 2024 (collectively, the "Delaware Stockholder Class Actions"). Both complaints seek equitable relief and unspecified monetary damages. On March 15, 2024, prior to the filing of the April 1, 2021 stockholder vote approving Drulias action, Defendants had moved to dismiss the proposal to amend and restate the Company's certificate of incorporation, as amended to give effect to the Charter Proposal (including its filing and effectiveness, in each case as of April 6, 2021) (the "New Charter") and (ii) the validation and declaration of effectiveness of (a) the Company's certificate of incorporation, as amended to give effect to the Charter Proposal (including its filing and effectiveness, in each case as of April 6, 2021) (the "New Charter") and (b) the securities issued or to be issued in reliance on the approval Taylor action. No schedule has been set for either of the Charter Proposal and/or the validity of the New Charter, as of the respective dates of issuance to resolve any uncertainty with respect to those matters (captioned, *In re AST SpaceMobile, Inc.*, C.A. No. 2023-0202-LWW (Del. Ch.)).

On March 14, 2023, the Court of Chancery approved the Company's request for relief and entered an order under Section 205 of DGCL (1) declaring the Company's New Charter, including the filing and effectiveness thereof, as validated and effective retroactive to the date of its filing with the Office of the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware on April 6, 2021, and all amendments effected thereby and (2) ordering that the Company's securities (and the issuance of the securities) described in the petition and other securities issued in reliance of the validity of the New Charter are validated and declared effective, each as of the original issuance date. Stockholder Class Actions.

#### **14.11 Stockholders' Equity**

The audited Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity reflect the Business Combination as described in Note 3. Prior to the Business Combination, NPA was a Special Purpose Acquisition Company or a "blank check company", defined as a development stage company formed for the sole purpose of effecting a merger, capital stock exchange, asset acquisition, stock purchase, reorganization or similar business combination with one or more businesses.

72

##### **Class A Common Stock**

At December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, there were 71,819,926 90,161,309 shares of Class A Common Stock issued and outstanding. Holders of Class A Common Stock are entitled to one vote for each share. The Company is authorized to issue 800,000,000 shares of Class A Common Stock with a par value of \$0.0001 per share.

##### **Class B Common Stock**

At December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, there were 50,041,757 shares of Class B Common Stock issued and outstanding. Shares of Class B Common Stock were issued to the Existing Equityholders then existing equity holders of AST LLC (other than Mr. Abel Avellan) in connection with Avellan, the Company's Chairman and Chief Executive Officer ("Mr. Avellan") at the time of the Business Combination and are non-economic, but entitle the holder to one vote per share. The Company is authorized to issue 200,000,000 shares of Class B Common Stock with a par value of \$0.0001 per share. The Existing Equityholders existing equity holders (other than Mr. Avellan) at the time of the Business Combination own economic interests in AST LLC which are redeemable into either shares of Class A common stock on a one-for-one basis or cash at the option of the Redemption Election Committee. Company. Upon redemption of the AST LLC Common Units by the Existing Equityholders existing equity holders (other than Mr. Avellan), a corresponding number of shares of Class B common stock held by such Existing Equityholders existing equity holders will be cancelled.

##### **Class C Common Stock**

97

At December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, there were 78,163,078 shares of Class C Common Stock issued and outstanding. Shares of Class C Common Stock were issued to Mr. Abel Avellan in connection with the Business Combination and are non-economic, but entitle the holder to ten votes per share and the Class C Share Voting Amount,

the latter of which is a number of votes per share equal to (1) (x) an amount of votes equal to 88.3% of the total voting power of the outstanding voting stock, minus (y) the total voting power of the outstanding capital stock (other than Class C Common Stock) owned or controlled by Mr. Avellan and his permitted transferees, divided by (2) the number of shares of Class C Common Stock then outstanding (the "Super-Voting Rights"). The Company is authorized to issue 125,000,000 shares of Class C Common Stock with a par value of \$0.0001 per share.

Mr. Avellan owns economic interests in AST LLC which are redeemable into either shares of Class A common stock on a one-for-one basis or cash at the option of the **Redemption Election Committee**. Upon redemption of any AST LLC Common Units held by Mr. Avellan, a corresponding number of shares of Class C common stock held by Mr. Avellan will be cancelled. Correspondingly, the Super-Voting Rights associated with such shares of Class C common stock will be terminated.

#### **Preferred Stock**

At **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**, there were no shares of preferred stock issued or outstanding. The Company is authorized to issue 100,000,000 shares of preferred stock with a par value of \$0.0001 per share with such designation, rights and preferences as may be determined from time to time by the Company's Board of Directors.

#### **Noncontrolling Interest**

##### **Nano**

AST LLC owned 51.0% of and controlled Nano up and until the sale of Nano on September 6, 2022. As a result, the Company consolidated the financial results of Nano and reported **The** noncontrolling interests **representing the equity interests held by equity-holders other than the Company in the December 31, 2021 audited Consolidated Balance Sheet.** As of December 31, 2021, the noncontrolling interest in Nano was approximately 49.0%. In connection with the sale of Nano on September 6, 2022, the noncontrolling interest in Nano was deconsolidated. Refer to Note 16 for further information.

There were no changes to the noncontrolling interest percentage in Nano during the years ended December 31, 2021 and during 2022 up to the date of sale of Nano on September 6, 2022.

##### **AST LLC**

On April 6, 2021, upon the close of the Business Combination, the Company held a 28.5% ownership interest in AST LLC and became the sole managing member of AST LLC, allowing it to control the operating decisions of AST LLC. As a result of this control, the Company has consolidated the financial position and results of operations of AST LLC. The Company reports noncontrolling interests representing **primarily represent** the equity interest in AST LLC held by members other than the Company in the accompanying audited Consolidated Balance Sheets. On the date of the Business Combination, the noncontrolling interest percentage in AST LLC was approximately 71.5%. During the year ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, there was a change in the noncontrolling interest percentage primarily as a result of the issuance of shares under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement with B. Riley Principal Capital, LLC, the Equity Distribution Agreement with Evercore Group L.L.C. and B. Riley Securities, Inc and the Common Stock Offering noted below. As of December 31, 2022, the noncontrolling interest percentage in AST LLC was approximately 64.2%.

Company. Changes in the Company's ownership interest in AST LLC while retaining control of AST LLC are accounted for as equity transactions. Income or loss is attributed to the noncontrolling interests based on their contractual distribution rights, and the relative percentages of equity interest held by the Company and the other members during the period.

As the sole managing member of AST LLC controlling the operating decisions of AST LLC, the Company consolidates the financial position and results of operations of AST LLC and its subsidiaries. The Company reports equity interest in AST LLC held by members other than the Company as noncontrolling interest in the consolidated balance sheets. The noncontrolling interest is classified as permanent equity within the consolidated balance sheets as the Company may only elect to settle a redemption request in cash if the cash delivered in the exchange is limited to the amount of net proceeds from the issuance and sale of a Class A Common Stock from a new permanent equity offering.

Each issuance of the Company's Class A Common Stock is accompanied by a corresponding issuance of AST LLC Common Units to the Company, which results in changes in ownership and reduction in noncontrolling interest. At December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, there were 11,547,600 Public Warrants and 6,050,000 Private Placement Warrants outstanding (see Note 12:9: Warrant Liabilities for further details), each of which entitles the holder to purchase one whole share of Class A Common Stock at a price of \$11.50 per share. Each warrant exercise is accompanied by a corresponding issuance of AST LLC Common Units to the Company, which will result in a change in ownership and reduce the amount recorded as noncontrolling interest and increase additional paid-in capital.

In addition, the Fifth Amended and Restated Limited Liability Company Operating Agreement of AST LLC Agreement permits the noncontrolling interest holders of AST LLC Common Units to exchange AST LLC Common Units, together with related shares of the Company's Class B Common Stock or Class C Common Stock, for shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock on a one-for-one basis or, at the election of the Company, for cash (a "Cash Exchange." "Cash Exchange"). A Cash Exchange is limited to the amount of net proceeds from the issuance and sale of Class A Common Stock. Stock from a new permanent equity offering. Future redemptions or direct exchanges of AST LLC Common Units by the noncontrolling interest holders will result in a change in ownership and reduce the amount recorded as noncontrolling interest and increase additional paid-in capital. Certain members of AST LLC also hold incentive stock options that are subject to service or performance conditions (see Note 15:12: Stock-Based Compensation for further details), that are exercisable for AST LLC Common Units. The exercise of the options will result results in a change in ownership and increase increases the amount recorded as noncontrolling interest and decrease decreases additional paid-in capital.

As of December 31, 2023 and December 31, 2022, the noncontrolling interest in AST LLC was approximately 58.7% and 64.2%, respectively. The decrease in noncontrolling interest percentage during the year ended December 31, 2023 was a result of the issuance of Class A Common Stock under the Common Stock Offering and Equity Distribution Agreement, redemption of AST LLC Common Units in exchange for Class A Common Stock and the vesting of the Company's restricted stock units, partially offset by exercise of options to AST LLC Common Units.

### **Common Stock Purchase Agreement**

On May 6, 2022, the Company entered into a Common Stock Purchase Agreement and a Registration Rights Agreement (collectively referred to as the "Common Stock Purchase Agreement") with B. Riley Principal Capital, LLC ("B. Riley"). Pursuant to the Common Stock Purchase Agreement, the Company has the right, in its sole discretion, to sell to B. Riley up to \$75.0 million of shares of the Company's Class A common stock at 97% of the volume weighted average price ("VWAP") of the Class A common stock calculated in accordance with the Common Stock Purchase Agreement, over a period of 24 months subject to certain limitations and conditions contained in the Common Stock Purchase Agreement. Sales and timing of any sales of Class A common stock are solely at the election of the Company, and the Company is under no obligation to sell any securities to B. Riley under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement.

As consideration for B. Riley's commitment to purchase shares of Under the Company's Class A common stock, Common Stock Purchase Agreement, the Company has issued 43,938 shares of its Class A common stock as commitment shares and will issue up to an aggregate of 43,938 shares of its Class A common stock if certain conditions are met. Other than the issuance of commitment shares of the Class A common stock to B. Riley, the Company had issued 1,756,993 shares of its Class A common stock Common Stock as of December 31, 2022, aggregating to resulting in net proceeds of \$13.4 million million. The Company did not issue any shares of its Class A Common Stock under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement. Agreement during the year ended December 31, 2023. Proceeds from the sale of the Company's Class A common stock under the Common Stock Purchase Agreement were and are expected to continue to be used for general corporate purposes.

During the year ended December 31, 2022, the Company incurred an aggregate cost of \$1.4 million in connection with the Common Stock Purchase Agreement which is included in other income (expense), net in the audited Consolidated Statement of Operations. These costs include the transaction costs incurred in connection with execution of the Common Stock Purchase Agreement, fair value of commitment shares issued to B. Riley, and commissions paid to B. Riley for sale of shares of Class A common stock.

### ***Equity Distribution Agreement***

On September 8, 2022, the Company entered into an Equity Distribution Agreement (the "Sales Agreement" or "At The Market Equity Program") with Evercore Group L.L.C. and B. Riley Securities, Inc. (collectively, the "agents") to sell shares of the Company's Class A common stock having an aggregate sale price of up to \$150.0 million through an "at the market offering" program under which the agents act as sales agents. The sales of the shares made under the Sales Agreement may be made by any method permitted by law deemed to be an "at the market offering" as defined in Rule 415 promulgated under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended. The agents sell the Company's Class A common stock based upon the Company's instructions (including any price, time or size limits or other customary parameters or conditions the Company may impose). Under the Sales Agreement, the agents are entitled to total compensation at a commission rate of

up to 3.0% of the gross sales price per share sold.

Under the Sales Agreement, the Company issued 2,697,091 1,527,909 shares of its Class A common stock during the year ended December 31, 2023, aggregating to proceeds of \$7.2 million, net of commissions paid to the agents and transaction costs. The Company had issued 2,697,091 shares of its Class A Common Stock as of December 31, 2022, aggregating to proceeds of \$20.0 million, net of commissions paid to the agents and transaction costs. During the year ended

74

December 31, 2022, the Company paid commission of \$0.6 million to the agents with respect to such sales and incurred initial transaction costs of \$1.1 million. Proceeds from the sale of the Company's Class A common stock under the Sales Agreement were and are expected to continue to be used for general corporate purposes.

### **Common Stock Offering**

On December 2, 2022 June 30, 2023, the Company issued 13,636,364 12,500,000 shares of Class A Common Stock in a public offering and received proceeds of \$68.6 56.6 million, net of underwriting commissions of \$5.3 million and transaction costs of \$1.1 0.3 million. The Company provided a 30-day option to the underwriting agent to purchase up to an additional 2,045,454 1,875,000 shares to cover over-allotments, if any. The over-allotment option was not exercised. Proceeds from the sale of the Company's Class A common stock under the Common Stock Offering were and are expected to be used for general corporate purposes.

99

## **15.12 Stock-Based Compensation**

### **Stock-Based Compensation Expense**

Stock-based compensation, measured at the grant date based on the fair value of the award, is typically recognized ratably over the requisite services period, using the straight-line method of expense attribution. The Company recorded stock-based compensation expense in the following categories of its audited Consolidated Statements consolidated statements of Operations operations and Balance Sheets balance sheets (in thousands):

Year ended December 31,		Year ended December 31,	
2022	2021	2023	2022

Engineering services	\$ 5,026	\$ 2,036	\$ 8,832	\$ 5,026
General and administrative costs	4,365	1,700	4,457	4,365
BlueWalker 3 satellite - construction in progress <sup>(1)</sup>	(45)	38	-	(45)
Total	\$ 9,346	\$ 3,774	\$ 13,289	\$ 9,346

(1) For the year ended December 31, 2022 stock-based compensation was reversed as a result of forfeiture of options previously provided to a supplier.

The Company estimates the fair value of the stock option awards to employees, non-employees and non-employee members of the Board of Directors using the Black-Scholes option pricing model, which requires the input of subjective assumptions, including (i) the expected volatility of the Company's stock, (ii) the expected term of the award, (iii) the risk-free interest rate, and (iv) any expected dividends. Due to the lack of company-specific historical and implied volatility data, the Company based the estimate of expected volatility on the estimated and expected volatilities of a representative group of publicly traded companies. For these analyses, the Company selects companies with comparable characteristics including enterprise value, risk profiles, position within the industry, and with historical share price information sufficient to meet the expected life of the stock-based awards. The Company computes the historical volatility data using the daily closing prices for the selected companies' shares during the equivalent period of the calculated expected term of the stock-based awards. The Company will continue to apply this process until a sufficient amount of historical information regarding the volatility of the Company's stock price becomes available. For awards that qualify as "plain-vanilla" options, the Company estimates the expected life of the employee stock options using the "simplified" method, whereby, the expected life equals the average of the vesting term and the original contractual term of the option. The expected term of stock options granted to non-employees is equal to the contractual term of the option award. The risk-free interest rate is determined by reference to the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of grant of the award for time periods approximately equal to the expected term of the award. Expected dividend yield is based on the fact that the Company has never paid cash dividends and does not expect to pay any cash dividends in the foreseeable future. The Company elects to account for forfeitures as they occur rather than apply an estimated forfeiture rate to stock-based compensation expense.

The fair value of restricted stock units granted to employees, non-employees, and non-employee members of the Board of Directors is based on the fair value of the Company's stock on the grant date. The Company elects to account for forfeitures as they occur rather than apply an estimated forfeiture rate to stock-based compensation expense.

#### **AST LLC 2019 Equity Incentive Plan**

Prior to the Business Combination, under the 2019 Equity Incentive Plan ("AST LLC Incentive Plan"), AST LLC was authorized to issue ordinary shares, as well as options exercisable for ordinary shares, as incentives to its employees, non-employees, and non-employee members of its Board of Directors. The issuance of share options and ordinary shares is administered by the Board of Directors using standardized share option and share subscription agreements. Following the Business Combination, no further grants

were made or will be made under the AST LLC Incentive Plan. However, in connection with the Business Combination, the existing AST LLC options were reclassified into options to acquire AST LLC Incentive Equity Units, and there was no incremental compensation cost and the terms of the outstanding awards, including fair value, vesting conditions and classification, were unchanged. Each AST LLC Incentive Equity Unit is convertible into one AST LLC Common Unit and each AST LLC Common Unit is redeemable for one share of Class A Common Stock on the later of the (i) 24-month anniversary of the consummation of the Business Combination and (ii) six-month anniversary from the vesting date. The AST LLC Incentive Plan will continue to govern the terms and conditions of the outstanding awards granted under it, except that in lieu of ordinary shares, holders of options under the AST LLC Incentive Plan have the right to exercise for AST LLC common units, Incentive Units, which may then be converted into AST LLC Common Units, which may further be converted into shares of the Company's Class A common stock. Common Stock.

There were two types of options granted under the AST LLC Incentive Plan: (1) service-based options and (2) performance-based options. Service-based options typically vest over a five year service period with 20% of the award vesting on the first anniversary of the employee's commencement date, and the balance thereafter in 48 equal monthly installments. Certain service-based options

also provide for accelerated vesting if there is a change in control or other performance condition as defined by the AST LLC Incentive Plan. Performance-based options typically vest on the earliest date that any of the following occurs: (i) AST LLC effects an initial public offering and becomes a reporting company, (ii) AST LLC experiences a change of control, or (iii) other specified performance conditions. Both service-based and performance-based options typically expire no later than 10 years from the date of grant.

In connection with the Closing, AST LLC entered into the Fifth Amended and Restated Limited Liability Operating Agreement (the "A&R Operating Agreement"), which, among other things, restructured the capitalization of AST LLC to reclassify all of the existing AST LLC options into AST LLC incentive equity units (the "AST LLC Incentive Equity Units"). In connection with the reclassification of the AST LLC options into AST LLC Incentive Equity Units, the maximum number of AST LLC Incentive Equity Units which may be issued under the AST LLC Incentive Plan were proportionately adjusted to be equal to (a) the share limit under the AST LLC Incentive Plan as of the effective date of the A&R Operating Agreement, multiplied by (b) 14.50149869 (rounded down to the nearest whole number of AST LLC Incentive Equity Units). Additionally, each unexpired and unexercised outstanding AST LLC option, whether vested or unvested, was proportionately adjusted such that (a) each AST LLC option will be exercisable for that number of AST LLC Incentive Equity Units equal to the product determined by multiplying (x) the number of AST LLC options that were issuable upon exercise immediately prior to the Closing by (y) 14.50149869 (rounded down to the nearest whole number of AST LLC Incentive Equity Units) and (b) the per unit exercise price for the AST LLC Incentive Equity Units issuable upon exercise of such AST

LLC option shall be equal to the quotient of (x) the exercise price per AST LLC option immediately prior to the Closing divided by (y) 14.50149869 (rounded down to the nearest millionth). Each AST LLC option continues to be subject to the terms of the AST LLC Incentive Plan and the applicable award agreement evidencing such AST LLC option, and is further subject in all regards to the terms and conditions of the A&R Operating Agreement. Additionally, pursuant to the terms of the A&R Operating Agreement, each AST LLC Incentive Equity Unit is redeemable for one share of Class A Common Stock on the later of the (i) 24-month anniversary of the consummation of the Business Combination and (ii) six-month anniversary from the vesting date. As a result of the Business Combination, there was no incremental compensation cost and the terms of the outstanding awards, including fair value, vesting conditions and classification, were unchanged.

As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, AST LLC was authorized to issue a total of 12,812,959 ordinary shares under a reserve set aside for equity awards. As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, there were 10,767,799 7,770,421 options outstanding under the AST LLC Incentive Plan. Following the Business Combination on April 6, 2021, no further equity award grants were made under the AST LLC Incentive Plan.

The following table summarizes the Company's option activity for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023:

	Options	Exercise Price	Weighted-Average			Aggregate Intrinsic Value
			Weighted-Average		Remaining Contractual Term (years)	
	Options	Exercise Price	Options	Exercise Price	Term (years)	
Outstanding at December 31, 2021	12,359,322	\$ 0.83			7.67	\$ 87,882,197
Granted	-	-				
Exercised	(667,553)	0.10				
Cancelled or forfeited	(923,970)	1.37				
Outstanding at December 31, 2022	10,767,799	\$ 0.83			5.87	\$ 42,994,264
Options exercisable as of December 31, 2022	8,122,559	\$ 0.51			5.44	\$ 35,027,302
Vested and expected to vest at December 31, 2022	9,388,382	\$ 0.87			5.67	\$ 37,040,735

76

	Options	Exercise Price	Weighted-Average			Aggregate Intrinsic Value
			Weighted-Average		Remaining Contractual Term (years)	
	Options	Exercise Price	Options	Exercise Price	Term (years)	
Outstanding at December 31, 2022	10,767,799	\$ 0.83			5.87	\$ 42,994,264
Granted	-	-				
Exercised	(2,972,581)	0.08				
Cancelled or forfeited	(24,797)	3.35				

Outstanding at December 31, 2023	7,770,421	\$ 1.11	5.76	\$ 38,262,071
Options exercisable as of December 31, 2023	5,960,866	\$ 0.90	5.59	\$ 30,552,352
Vested and expected to vest at December 31, 2023	6,391,004	\$ 1.24	5.66	\$ 30,639,437

The following table summarizes the Company's unvested option activity for the year ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**:

	<b>Number of Shares</b>	<b>Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value</b>	<b>Number of Shares</b>	<b>Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value</b>
Unvested at December 31, 2021	5,188,990	\$ 0.64		
Unvested at December 31, 2022			2,645,240	\$ 0.80
Granted	-	-	-	-
Vested	(1,798,816)	0.46	(814,415)	0.76
Forfeited	(744,934)	0.51	(21,270)	2.25
Unvested at December 31, 2022	2,645,240	\$ 0.80		
Unvested at December 31, 2023			1,809,555	\$ 0.80

The weighted-average grant-date fair value per share of stock options granted during the year ended December 31, 2021 was \$4.15.

The total intrinsic value of options exercised during the year ended December 31, 2022 was \$3.1 million.

As of December 31, 2022, total unrecognized compensation expense related to the unvested stock options was \$1.7 million, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted average period of 1.87 years.

The fair value of each stock option is estimated on the date of grant using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model, with the assumptions used for the year ended December 31, 2021, presented on a weighted average basis. There were no stock options granted during the year ended December 31, 2022 under the AST LLC Incentive Plan. December 31, 2023 and 2022.

	<b>Year ended December 31, 2021</b>
Exercise price	\$ 10.00
Fair market value	\$ 4.15
Expected dividend yield	0.0%
Expected term (in years)	6.3
Expected volatility	42.24%
Weighted-average risk-free rate	0.55%

The total intrinsic value of options exercised during the year ended December 31, 2023 was \$17.7 million.

As of December 31, 2023, total unrecognized compensation expense related to the unvested stock options was \$1.1 million, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted average period of 1.51 years.

#### **SpaceMobile 2020 Incentive Award Plan**

In connection with the Business Combination, the Company adopted the 2020 Incentive Award Plan (the "2020 Plan"). Awards may be made under the 2020 Plan covering an aggregate number of Class A Common Stock shares equal to 10,800,000. Any shares distributed pursuant to an award may consist, in whole or in part, of authorized and unissued common stock, treasury common stock or common stock purchased on the open market. The 2020 Plan provides for the grant of stock options, restricted stock, dividend equivalents, restricted stock units, incentive unit awards, stock appreciation rights, and other stock or cash-based awards. Each incentive unit issued pursuant to an award, if any, shall count as one share for purposes of calculating the aggregate number of shares available for issuance under the 2020 Plan.

Two types of equity awards have been granted under the 2020 Plan: (1) service-based options and (2) service-based and performance-based restricted stock units. Service-based options typically vest over a four year service period with 25% of the award vesting on the first anniversary of the employee's commencement date, and the balance thereafter in 36 equal monthly installments. Service-based restricted stock units typically vest over a four year service period with 25% of the award vesting on each anniversary of the employee's vesting commencement date. Performance-based restricted stock units typically vest on the earliest date that any

101

---

of the following occurs: (i) the Company attains an incremental capital investment, or (ii) other specified performance conditions. Options typically expire no later than 10 years from the date of grant.

77

---

#### *Stock Options*

As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, there were 3,697,649 3,313,080 options outstanding under the 2020 Plan.

The following table summarizes the Company's option activity under the 2020 Plan for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023:

	Weight				Weighted-Average			
	ed- Averag e	Weighted- Average	Aggre gate	Weighted- Average	Weighted-Average	Remaining	Aggregate	
Op tio ns	Exercis e Price	Remaining Contractual Term (years)	Intrins ic Value	Options	Exercise Price	Contractual Term (years)	Intrinsic Value	
Outstanding at December 31, 2021	1,881	10.35	9.70	5	\$ 10.35	(4,549)	9,597	\$ 7)
Outstanding at December 31, 2022	2,073	9.20	9.70	0	\$ 9.71	3,697,649	9.07	\$ (18,077,872)
Granted	1,500	9.20		288,300	5.28			
Exercised	(2,646)	-		-	-			
Cancelled or forfeited	1,666	10.27		(672,869)	9.26			
Outstanding at December 31, 2022	3,669	9.71	9.07	9	\$ 72)	(18,077,872)	77,804	\$ 72)

	7		
Options exercisable as of December 31, 2022	3,053	\$ 10.23	8.15 0)
	3,614		

	1		
expected to vest at December 31, 2022	4,474	\$ 9.66	9.06 32)
	3,614		

Outstanding at December

31, 2023 3,313,080 \$ 9.27 8.29 (10,726,391)

Options exercisable as of December

31, 2023 1,583,171 \$ 9.75 7.70 (5,883,276)

Vested and expected to vest at December

31, 2023 3,313,080 \$ 9.27 8.29 (10,726,391)

The following table summarizes the Company's unvested option activity for the year ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023:

	Number of Shares	Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value	Number of Shares	Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value
Unvested at December 31, 2021	1,803,344	\$ 4.41		
Unvested at December 31, 2022			2,959,596	\$ 4.26
Granted	2,073,150	4.16	288,300	2.53

Vested	(666,424)	4.28	(1,052,229)	4.22
Forfeited	(250,474)	4.42	(465,758)	4.40
Unvested at				
December 31, 2022	2,959,596	\$ 4.26		
Unvested at				
December 31, 2023			1,729,909	\$ 3.96

The weighted-average grant-date fair value per share of stock options granted during the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 was \$4.16 2.53 and \$4.40 4.16, respectively.

As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, total unrecognized compensation expense related to the unvested stock options was \$11.2 6.7 million, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted average period of 3.17 2.40 years.

The fair value of each stock option is estimated on the date of grant using a Black-Scholes option-pricing model, with the assumptions used for the years ended December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021, 2022, presented on a weighted average basis:

	Year ended		Year ended			
	December 31,		December 31,			
	2022	2021	2023	2022		
Exercise price	\$ 9.20	\$ 10.35	\$ 5.28	\$ 9.20		
Fair market value	\$ 4.16	\$ 4.40	\$ 2.53	\$ 4.16		
Expected dividend yield	0.0 %	0.0 %	0.0 %	0.0 %		
Expected term (in years)	6.1	6.1	6.1	6.1		
Expected volatility	42.13 %	42.38 %	43.81 %	42.13 %		
Weighted-average risk-free rate	3.24 %	1.11 %	3.75 %	3.24 %		

#### Restricted Stock Units

As of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, there were 3,246,220 2,879,418 restricted stock units outstanding under the 2020 Plan.

78 102

The following table summarizes the Company's unvested restricted stock unit activity for the year ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**:

	<b>Number of Shares</b>	<b>Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value</b>	<b>Number of Shares</b>	<b>Weighted-Average Grant Date Fair Value</b>
Unvested at December 31, 2021	1,686,03			
	1	\$ 10.14		
Unvested at December 31, 2022			3,246,220	\$ 9.65
	2,047,13			
Granted	9	9.25	661,348	4.96
Vested	(411,450)	9.77	(822,275)	10.10
Forfeited	(75,500)	9.27	(205,875)	8.69
Unvested at December 31, 2022	3,246,22			
	0	\$ 9.65		
Unvested at December 31, 2023			2,879,418	\$ 8.51

As of **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**, total unrecognized compensation expense related to the unvested restricted stock units was **\$15.1** **12.9** million, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted average period of **2.96** **2.31** years.

#### **SpaceMobile 2020 Employee Stock Purchase Plan**

In connection with the Business Combination, the Company adopted the 2020 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (the "ESPP"). The aggregate number of common stock shares that may be issued pursuant to rights granted under the ESPP is 2,000,000 shares. If any right granted under the ESPP shall for any reason terminate without having been exercised, the shares not purchased under such right shall again become available for issuance under the ESPP. As of **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**, the Company had not issued any awards under the ESPP.

#### **16.13 Nano Sale**

On **July 2, 2022** **September 6, 2022**, AST LLC entered into a share sale and purchase agreement (the "Share Sale and Purchase Agreement") for completed the sale of its 51% interest in its former subsidiary, Nano (the "Share Sale") to Kongsberg Defence & Aerospace AS, a private limited liability company incorporated under the laws of Norway. The Share Sale and Purchase Agreement provided Norway ("Kongsberg") for a purchase price of €65.0 million in total enterprise value

for the purchase of Nano. On September 6, 2022, AST LLC completed the Share Sale and received net proceeds net of transaction costs and working capital adjustments, of \$26.6 million. In connection with closing of the Share Sale, AST LLC also entered into a cooperation agreement with Nano relating to ongoing commercial arrangements in the normal course of business. After completion of the Share Sale, Nano is no longer a related party of the Company.

The carrying amount of assets, of \$17.6 million, liabilities, of \$15.1 million, and noncontrolling interests of \$1.3 million interest attributable to Nano were deconsolidated on the date of sale September 6, 2022 and there are no remaining carrying amounts on the Company's audited Consolidated Balance Sheets as of December 31, 2022. Upon completion of the Share Sale, the Company recognized a net gain of \$24.5 million including the reclassification of accumulated translation adjustments of (\$0.7) million attributable to Nano, which is included in other (expense) income, (expense), net in the audited Consolidated Statement consolidated statement of Operations. Income from operations from for the year ended December 31, 2022. The accompanying consolidated financial statements for year ended December 31, 2022 included the results of operations and cash flows of Nano is presented in the Company's audited Consolidated Statement of Operations through up to the date of sale of Nano. The revenues and cost of sales for the Share Sale, year ended December 31, 2022 were exclusively related to Nano.

Nano recognized revenue related to sales of manufactured small satellites and their components, as well as launch-related services. This was the Company's only source of revenue during the year ended December 31, 2022 and until the sale of Nano on September 6, 2022. Revenue recognized over time versus revenue recognized upon transfer during the year ended December 31, 2022 was as follows (in thousands):

	Year ended December 31, 2022
Revenue from performance obligations recognized over time	\$ 12,491
Revenue from performance obligations recognized at point-in-time transfer	1,334
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 13,825</b>

## 17.14 Income Taxes

The Company, organized as a C corporation, owns an equity interest in AST LLC in what is commonly referred to as an "Up-C" structure. For U.S. federal and state income tax purposes, AST LLC has elected to be treated as a partnership and does not pay any income taxes since its income and losses are included in the returns of the members. The portion of the Company's taxable income or loss attributable to the noncontrolling interests of AST LLC is taxed directly to such members. Consequently, no provision for income taxes, has been included in the financial statements related to this portion of taxable income. Certain foreign wholly-owned entities are taxed as corporations in the jurisdictions in which they operate, and accruals for such taxes are included in the audited consolidated financial statements. The Company has operations in India, Scotland, Spain, Israel and Lithuania (through September 6, 2022) with tax filings in each foreign jurisdiction.

## Income Tax Expense

The components of loss income (loss) before income taxes were as follows (in thousands):

	Year ended December 31,		Year ended December 31,	
	2022		2023	
	2021	2022	2023	2022
United States	\$ (98,774)	\$ (70,396)	\$ (230,487)	\$ (98,774)
Foreign	(3,722)	(2,534)	9,491	(3,722)
Total	\$ (102,496)	\$ (72,930)	\$ (220,996)	\$ (102,496)

The income tax expense (benefit) was as follows (in thousands):

	Year ended December 31,		Year ended December 31,	
	2022		2023	
	2021	2022	2023	2022
<b>Current:</b>				
Federal	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -
State	-	-	-	-
Foreign	617	331	2,576	617
Total current	617	331	2,576	617
<b>Deferred:</b>				
Federal	-	-	-	-
State	-	-	-	-
Foreign	-	-	(895)	-
Total deferred	-	-	(895)	-
<b>Total income tax provision</b>	<b>\$ 617</b>	<b>\$ 331</b>	<b>\$ 1,681</b>	<b>\$ 617</b>

The differences between the effective income tax rate and the statutory U.S. federal income tax rate are as follows:

	Year ended	Year ended December 31,
	December 31,	

	2022	2021	2023	2022
Statutory U.S. federal income tax rate	21 %	21 %	21 %	21 %
Income (loss) attributable to noncontrolling interest	(16)%	(19)%		
Income (loss) attributable to noncontrolling interest and non taxable income (loss)			(13 %)	(16 %)
Changes in fair value of warrant liabilities	4 %	5 %	1 %	4 %
Change in valuation allowance	(10)%	(99)%	(10 %)	(10 %)
Business Combination	0 %	89 %		
R&D credit	2 %	0 %		
Research and development credit			1 %	2 %
Other	(2)%	3 %	(1 %)	(2 %)
Effective income tax rate	(1)%	0 %	(1 %)	(1 %)

#### **Deferred Tax Assets and Liabilities.**

Deferred income taxes reflect the net tax effects of tax carryovers and temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the balances for income tax purposes. Significant components of deferred tax assets and liabilities are as follows (in thousands):

	As of December 31,		As of December 31, 2022
	2022	2021	
<b>Deferred tax assets:</b>			
Net operating loss carryforwards	\$ 11,788	\$ 8,212	\$ 21,965
Basis difference in the equity of AST LLC	79,396	62,717	95,170
Research and development credit			6,524
Other	3,680	1,495	635
<b>Total deferred tax assets</b>	<b>94,864</b>	<b>72,425</b>	<b>124,294</b>
Valuation allowance	(94,864)	(72,425)	(123,399)
<b>Net deferred tax assets</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 895</b>

At December 31, 2022 104

As of December 31, 2023 the Company had unused federal net operating loss carryforwards (gross) for federal income tax purposes of approximately \$44.4 99.4 million, which can be carried forward indefinitely and may be used to offset future taxable income. In addition, the Company had unused net operating loss carryforwards (gross) for state income tax purposes of approximately \$3.1 5.6

million, \$0.7 million of which expire in 2041. The remaining \$2.4 4.9 million state net operating loss can be carried forward indefinitely. The Company also had unused net operating loss carryforwards (gross) for foreign income tax purposes of approximately \$9.5 3.0 million, which can be carried forward indefinitely.

Management assesses the need for a valuation allowance in each tax paying component or jurisdiction based upon the available positive and negative evidence to estimate whether sufficient taxable income will exist to permit realization of the deferred tax assets. On the basis of this evaluation, as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 and 2021 2022 the Company's valuation allowance was \$94.9 123.4 million and \$72.4 94.9 million, respectively. The change from December 31, 2021 December 31, 2022 to December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023 was primarily driven by the basis difference in the equity of AST LLC and an increase in the net operating loss carryforward in the U.S. jurisdiction. As of December 31, 2023, there is no valuation allowance recorded against the foreign deferred tax assets of \$0.9 million as it is more likely than not that the foreign deferred tax assets will be fully realized. The foreign deferred tax asset is subject to foreign exchange risk, which could reduce the amount the Company may ultimately realize. Additionally, future changes in tax laws or interpretations of such tax laws may limit the Company's ability to fully utilize the foreign net operating loss carryforwards.

#### ***Unrecognized Tax Benefits.***

There were no unrecognized tax benefits and no amounts accrued for interest and penalties as of December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023. The Company is currently not aware of any issues under review that could result in significant payments, accruals or material deviation from its position.

#### ***Tax Receivable Agreement***

In connection with the Closing, the Company entered into the Tax Receivable Agreement. Pursuant to the Tax Receivable Agreement, the Company is generally required to pay the TRA Holders 85% 85.0% of the amount of savings, if any, in U.S. federal, state, local, and foreign taxes that are based on, or measured with respect to, net income or profits, and any interest related thereto that the Company and any applicable consolidated, unitary, or combined Subsidiaries (the "Tax Group") realize, or are deemed to realize, as a result of certain "Tax Attributes," which include:

- existing tax basis in certain assets of AST LLC and certain of its direct or indirect Subsidiaries, including assets that eventually be subject to depreciation or amortization, once placed in service, attributable to AST LLC Common L

acquired by the Company from a TRA Holder (including AST LLC Common Units held by a Blocker Corporation acquired by us in a Reorganization Transaction (as defined in the Tax Receivable Agreement)), each as determined at the time of the relevant acquisition;

- tax basis adjustments resulting from taxable exchanges of AST LLC Common Units (including any such adjustments resulting from certain payments made by us under the Tax Receivable Agreement) acquired by the Company from a TRA Holder pursuant to the terms of the A&R Operating Agreement;
- tax deductions in respect of portions of certain payments made under the Tax Receivable Agreement; and
- certain tax attributes of Blocker Corporations holding AST LLC Common Units that are acquired directly or indirectly by the Company pursuant to a Reorganization Transaction.

Some circumstances, such as the Company's election to terminate early the TRA or certain changes of control of the Company or AST LLC (as described in the A&R Operating Agreement), may require the Company to make lump-sum cash payments based on certain assumptions to all the TRA Holders equal to the present value of all forecasted future payments that would have otherwise been made under the Tax Receivable Agreement. Payments under the Tax Receivable Agreement will be the obligations of the Company and not obligations of AST LLC. Any payments made by the Company under the Tax Receivable Agreement will generally reduce the amount of overall cash flow that might have otherwise been available to the Company.

As of ~~December 31, 2022~~ December 31, 2023, there have been no TRA liabilities recorded.

## **18.15 Net Loss per Share**

Basic and diluted net loss per share attributable to the holders of Class A Common Stock is computed by dividing net loss attributable to common stockholders by the weighted-average number of shares of Class A Common Stock outstanding during the period.

Prior to the Business Combination, the membership structure of AST LLC included units which shared in the profits and losses of AST LLC. The Company analyzed the calculation of loss per unit for periods prior to the Business Combination and determined that it resulted in values that would not be meaningful to the readers of these audited consolidated financial statements. Therefore, the basic and diluted net loss per share for the year ended December 31, 2021 represent only the period of April 6, 2021 to December 31, 2021.<sup>105</sup>

---

The following table sets forth reconciliations of the numerators and denominators used to compute basic and diluted net loss per share of Class A Common Stock (in thousands, except share data):

	Year Ended		Year Ended December 31,	
	December 31,			
	2022	2021	2023	2022
<b>Numerator</b>				
Net loss before allocation to noncontrolling interest	(103, 113)	(73, 61)	\$ (222,677)	\$ (103,113)
Net loss attributable to AST LLC pre Business Combination		(11,580)		
Net loss attributable to the noncontrolling interest post Business Combination	(71,473)	(42,708)		
Net loss attributable to the noncontrolling interest			(135,116)	(71,473)
Net loss attributable to common stockholders - basic and diluted	(31,640)	(18,973)	\$ (87,561)	\$ (31,640)
<b>Denominator</b>				
Weighted-average shares of Class A	54,4	51,7		
Common Stock outstanding - basic and diluted	37,0	29,7		
	73	85	81,824,122	54,437,073
Net loss per share attributable to holders of Class A Common Stock - basic and diluted	\$ (0.58)	\$ (0.37)	\$ (1.07)	\$ (0.58)

At December 31, 2022 December 31, 2023, the Company excluded from the calculation of diluted net loss per share 50,041,757 shares of Class B Common Stock, 78,163,078 shares of Class C Common Stock, 11,547,600 Public Warrants, 6,050,000 Private Placement Warrants, and 1,457,000 1,208,125 unvested performance-based restricted stock units as their effect would have been to reduce the net loss per share. Therefore, the weighted-average number of shares of Class A Common Stock outstanding used to calculate both basic and diluted net loss per share of Class A Common Stock is the same.

Shares of the Company's Class B and Class C Common Stock do not participate in the earnings or losses of the Company and are therefore not participating securities. As such, separate presentation of basic and diluted loss per share of Class B and Class C Common Stock under the two-class method has not been presented.

## 19.16 Related Parties

### **Nano Financing Agreement Vodafone**

On January 12, 2022, AST LLC entered into a financing agreement (the "Nano Financing Agreement") with Nano, pursuant to which AST LLC made available to Nano a revolving loan for up to €1.5 million, whereby Nano had the ability to draw up to €0.8 million at a time subject to certain conditions. The loan bore interest at a rate of 4.00% per annum payable annually.

on the last day of each calendar year, or 7% upon an Event of Default as defined in the loan agreement. Principal payments were due and payable upon the issuance and/or sale of equity securities of Nano, and each calendar quarter if Nano's consolidated cash exceeded €4.0 million, with the final remaining balance of unpaid principal and interest due on December 1, 2023. The Nano Financing Agreement was accounted for as an intercompany transaction in the Company's audited consolidated financial statements. Upon closing of the Nano Share Sale on September 6, 2022, the full outstanding balance of \$0.5 million was repaid and the Nano Financing Agreement was terminated.

#### ***InMotion Holdings LLC***

Prior to the Nano Share Sale, InMotion Holdings, LLC, a Delaware limited liability company ("InMotion") wholly-owned by the Company's Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board, Mr. Avellan, owned 13% interest on a fully-diluted basis of Nano. Pursuant to the terms of the Share Sale and Purchase Agreement, InMotion received approximately €8.0 million on account of the option it held to acquire shares of Nano. The Company does not have any ownership interest in InMotion and did not receive any of these proceeds. Pursuant to the terms of a service agreement between Nano Lithuania and InMotion dated March 1, 2018 (the "InMotion Services Agreement"), InMotion agreed to provide consulting services including but not limited to marketing, sale support and general management support to Nano. The Services Agreement was terminated upon completion of the Nano Share Sale and no payments were made under the InMotion Services Agreement.

#### ***Support Services Agreement***

On January 20, 2020, the Company entered into the Support Services Agreement with Finser Corporation ("Finser"), which is part of the Cisneros Group of Companies, of which Ms. Adriana Cisneros, a member of the Company's Board of Directors, is the Chief Executive Officer, whereby Finser provided the Company certain consulting and administrative support services. The Company

82

---

incurred less than \$0.1 million and \$0.3 million in consulting services for the years ended December 31, 2022 and 2021, respectively. These costs were included within the general and administrative costs on the audited Consolidated Statements of Operations. The agreement terminated on June 30, 2022.

#### ***Vodafone***

AST LLC and Vodafone have agreed to enter into one or more definitive agreements for a commercial partnership that is anticipated to use the SpaceMobile Service (the "Vodafone Commercial Agreements"). In connection with the commercial agreement, AST LLC, its subsidiaries, and affiliates have agreed not to enter into any agreement, term sheet, or letter of intent that grants another party the rights related to the provision of mobile services in the Vodafone markets or Vodafone partner markets prior to the execution of the Vodafone Commercial Agreements.

The Vodafone Commercial Agreements are to include mutual exclusivity, conditioned upon Vodafone making the SpaceMobile Service available to all of its customers and certain promotional efforts, within all Vodafone markets for five years commencing on the launch of a commercial service in all of the Vodafone markets; preferential commercial terms in Vodafone partner markets; 50/50 revenue share for the SpaceMobile Service in Vodafone exclusivity markets; and the procurement, building and operating of mobile network ground stations at a mutually agreed cost by Vodafone. No payments have been made to date between AST LLC and Vodafone pursuant to the anticipated Vodafone Commercial

Agreements. Vodafone has the right to designate one individual to the Company's Board of Directors. Currently, Vodafone's designee is Luke Ibbetson, Head of Group Research & Development, Vodafone.

Also, AST LLC entered into a side letter with Vodafone dated December 15, 2020, under which AST LLC has agreed (i) not to enter into any material corporate strategic relationship or material commercial agreement with a party other than Vodafone and its affiliates that would be reasonably expected to materially frustrate AST LLC's ability to satisfy the obligations under the Vodafone Commercial Agreements with certain exceptions; (ii) to allocate sufficient funds in the capital budget to facilitate compliance with the obligations under the Vodafone Commercial Agreements; and (iii) not to alter the business plan in a manner that is materially detrimental to AST LLC's ability to satisfy the obligations under the Vodafone Commercial Agreements.

On January 16, 2024, the Company entered into a Convertible Security Investment Agreement (the "Investment Agreement") with Vodafone. Pursuant to the Investment Agreement, Vodafone agreed to purchase the Company's subordinated convertible notes for an aggregate principal amount of \$25.0 million (such notes, the "Notes" and such investments, the "Investments"). In connection with the Investments, Vodafone Group Services Limited ("Vodafone Group Services") have entered into letter agreements with AST LLC and the Company (the "Letter Agreements"). The letter agreement between Vodafone Group Services and AST LLC provides, among other things, for an initial revenue commitment of \$25.0 million to AST LLC to be paid by Vodafone Group

106

---

Services over a two and a half year period to be defined in a future definitive agreement for AST LLC to provide connectivity services. Also, Vodafone submitted a purchase order for network equipment from AST LLC to support planned commercial service.

### **American Tower**

AST LLC and American Tower have entered into a side letter agreement that which was subsequently amended and restated on December 15, 2020 to reflect the transactions and agreements contemplated by the Equity Purchase Agreement between us and NPA (the "Amended and Restated Letter Agreement"). The Amended and Restated Letter Agreement side letter contemplates that AST LLC and American Tower will enter into commercial agreements to use American Tower facilities for the terrestrial gateway facilities in certain markets. The term of the operational agreement with American Tower is for an anticipated five years after the initial launch of commercial mobile services by AST LLC.

On March 22, 2022, AST LLC and American Tower entered into a non-binding term sheet reflecting the terms and conditions for the deployment of AST LLC gateway satellite technology equipment on property owned and operated by American Tower. Under the agreement, American Tower will provide AST LLC leased space and managed services at its current and future tower sites and data centers under the global master lease agreement to be entered into by the parties.

The usage of any American Tower services in a Vodafone market will be memorialized in a commercial agreement among all three parties. In markets where Vodafone does not operate ("Carrier Neutral Markets"), AST LLC and American Tower may enter into an agreement for American Tower to manage the operation of our deployed gateway facility in such market. In Carrier Neutral Markets where the Company requires a third party to provide a gateway facility or services, AST LLC agrees to not accept any bid that is inferior to American Tower's best and final proposal for such gateway facility or services. AST LLC also agrees to use commercially reasonable efforts to utilize American Tower facilities in (i) Vodafone markets where Vodafone decides to not use its facilities, (ii) in Carrier Neutral Markets, and (iii) instances where the Company requires a third-party vendor.

Additionally, AST LLC will work with American Tower to evaluate and plan gateway facility and radio access network data center deployments with preferred vendor status to offer carrier-neutral hosting facilities in certain equatorial markets. American Tower will serve as the preferred vendor for carrier neutral hosting facilities. AST LLC will pay American Tower a monthly connection fee for use of a carrier neutral hosting facility, which AST LLC expects will be charged back to each applicable **MNO**, Mobile Network Operator ("MNO"). If AST LLC and American Tower agree to construct a new carrier neutral hosting facility or improve an existing one and American Tower elects to fund all such capital expenditures, American Tower will provide AST LLC with a fair-market, long-term lease to such facility. No payments have been made to date between AST LLC and American Tower under the Amended and Restated Letter Agreement. American Tower has the right to designate one individual to the **Company's** Board of Directors. Currently, American Tower's designee is Ed Knapp, Chief Technology Officer, American Tower.

83

---

### **Rakuten**

On February 4, 2020, AST LLC entered into a commercial agreement with Rakuten for the development of exclusive network capabilities in Japan compatible with the mobile network of Rakuten and its affiliates, which agreement was amended and restated as of December 15, 2020 (the "Rakuten Agreement"). Under the terms of the Rakuten Agreement, AST LLC agreed to make investments in building network capabilities in Japan that are compatible with the mobile network of Rakuten and its affiliates. Furthermore, AST LLC will collaborate with Rakuten to ensure network capability with Rakuten's licensed frequencies, including full coverage in Japan with 3GPP Band 3 frequencies with multiple input multiple output ("MIMO") capability. Upon the launch of such coverage, Rakuten will receive unlimited, exclusive rights and usage capacity in Japan in exchange for a \$0.5 million annual maintenance fee payable to AST LLC or our successors. Furthermore, AST LLC will make \$5.0 million (or such lesser amount as mutually agreed upon the parties) in capital investments towards the design, assembly, acquisition and implementation of ground communication assets. AST LLC and Rakuten will receive unlimited rights and usage of the ground assets for their respective operations, including, but not limited to, satellite and other telecommunication communications. **The term of the Rakuten Agreement shall remain in effect until AST LLC fulfills obligations under the Rakuten Agreement.** Rakuten has the right to designate two individuals to the Company's Board of Directors. Currently, **Rakuten's designees are Rakuten has designated** Hiroshi Mikitani, Founder,

Chairman and Chief Executive Officer, Rakuten, Inc., as a director and Tareq Amin, Chief Executive Officer, Rakuten Mobile, has the right to designate another individual.

The Rakuten Agreement includes key performance indicators ("KPIs") associated with the number of satellites launched, timing and coverage of the SpaceMobile Service in Japan in a phased manner that AST LLC must meet. If the applicable KPIs are not met for the last two phases noted in the Rakuten Agreement, was obligated to meet by June 2023, or if AST LLC becomes subject to any bankruptcy proceeding or becomes insolvent, AST LLC shall pay to Rakuten an amount of \$10.0 million. Payment of the amount can be made in the form of a promissory note 2023. In connection with 8.0% interest per annum payable in 12 quarterly installments over a three year term, which can be prepaid at AST LLC's election. The term of the Rakuten Agreement shall remain in effect until AST LLC fulfills obligations under the Rakuten Agreement. No payments have been made to date between AST LLC and Rakuten under the Rakuten Agreement.

As of December 31, 2022 and as of the date of this filing, AST LLC does not expect inability to meet the applicable KPIs stated in the Rakuten Agreement by June 2023. AST LLC and Rakuten are in discussions in light of the Company's current business plan, planned deployment, and commercialization strategy. However, there can be no assurance that Rakuten will agree to amend or waive the \$10.0 million payment that would be due for not meeting the KPIs. Accordingly, it is reasonably possible that deadline, the Company may incur recognized an estimated liability expense of \$10.0 million recorded in June Other (expense) income, net in the first quarter of 2023 and paid the amount in the third quarter of 2023.

Agreement with former Chief Financial Officer 107

#### Invesat and Director Antares Technologies

On May 16, 2022 March 4, 2024, the Company and Invesat LLC ("Invesat"), which is part of the Cisneros Group of Companies, of which Ms. Adriana Cisneros, a member of the Company's Board of Directors, is the Chief Executive Officer, completed a series of transactions (including a Blocker Merger Transaction as defined in the A&R Operating Agreement, the "Transactions") resulting in the acquisition by Antares of 10,445,200 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock. As part of the Transactions, 9,932,541 shares of the Company's Class B Common Stock and 200,000 shares of the Company's Class A Common Stock previously held by Invesat were cancelled.

As part of the Transactions, AST SpaceMobile Holdings II, LLC, a newly formed wholly owned subsidiary of the Company, merged with and into Invesat, with Invesat surviving such merger (the "First Merger") and, immediately following the First Merger, Invesat merged with and into AST SpaceMobile Holdings, LLC, a newly formed wholly owned subsidiary of us ("AST Holdings"), with AST Holdings surviving such merger (the "Second Merger"). After giving effect to the Transactions, the separate limited liability company existence of Invesat ceased.

In connection with the Transactions, the Company has agreed to use commercially reasonable efforts to take steps necessary to allow for the amendment and/or assignment of each of the Stockholders' Agreement and the Registration

Rights Agreement, within forty-five (45) days after the closings of the Transactions, to add an affiliate of Invesat, Antares, and remove Invesat as a party thereto to allow Antares to benefit from all of the rights previously held by Invesat thereunder. In the event that the Registration Rights Agreement and the Stockholders' Agreement are not amended and/or assigned with such forty-five (45)-day period, the Company has agreed to enter into a separate letter agreement with Antares which provides Antares with substantially the same rights as those held by Invesat LLC under each of the Registration Rights Agreement and the Stockholders' Agreement.

## 17. Subsequent Events

### **Convertible Security Investment Agreement**

On January 16, 2024, the Company entered into a consulting agreement by Convertible Security Investment Agreement (the "Investment Agreement") with AT&T, Google and between Vodafone (the "Investors"). Pursuant to the Investment Agreement, the Investors have agreed to purchase the Company's subordinated convertible notes for an aggregate principal amount of \$110.0 million (such notes, the "Notes" and such investments, the "Investments").

The Notes bear interest at a rate of 5.50% per year, payable semi-annually in arrears on June 30 and December 30 of each year, beginning on June 30, 2024. The Company has the option to pay interest on the Notes in cash or in kind. If the Company AST LLC, elects to pay interest on the Notes in kind, the principal amount of the Notes will be increased by the amount of the interest payment, and Thomas Severson, interest will accrue on such increased principal amount in subsequent interest periods. The Notes have a ten-year term unless earlier converted.

The holders of the former Chief Financial Officer, Chief Operating Officer and Director Notes (the "Holders") may convert the Notes (subject to certain exceptions) at an initial conversion rate of 173.9130 shares of Class A Common Stock per \$1,000 principal amount of Notes (equivalent to an initial conversion price of \$5.75 per share of Class A Common Stock). The Holders may convert their Notes at their option at any time on or after January 16, 2025. The Holders will also have the right to convert the Notes prior to January 16, 2025 in the event that the Company undergoes a fundamental change (defined to include change of control, certain mergers of the Company (the "Consulting Agreement") to assist with another company, the transition sale of his duties. Under all or substantially all of the Consulting Agreement, Mr. Severson agreed to provide consulting services through April 6, 2023, and assets of the Company, agreed and liquidation). The conversion rate is also subject to reimburse any of Mr. Severson's reasonable out-of-pocket expenses. Mr. Severson also agreed customary anti-dilution adjustments if certain events occur.

On or after January 16, 2025, the Company may require the Holders to convert the Notes (subject to certain transfer restrictions relating exceptions), at an initial conversion rate of 173.9130 shares of Class A Common Stock per \$1,000 principal amount of Notes (equivalent to an initial conversion price of \$5.75 per share of Class A Common Stock) at its option, if the Company's securities. Mr. Severson subsequently indicated to the Company that he was no longer able to provide consulting services and as of July 22, 2022, pursuant to the terms VWAP of the Consulting Agreement, Mr. Severson ceased performing consulting services Class A Common Stock has been at least 130% of the conversion price then in effect for the Company.

30 consecutive trading days, on the immediately succeeding trading day after the last trading day of such 30 day period.

Further, The Notes may be accelerated upon the occurrence of certain events of default and fundamental change. In the case of an event of default with respect to the Notes arising from specified events of bankruptcy or insolvency of the Company, 100% of the principal of, and accrued and unpaid interest on, May 16, 2022 the Notes will automatically become due and payable. If any other event of default with respect to the Notes occurs or is continuing (which include customary

events of default, including the failure to pay principal or interest when due and the failure to comply with other covenants contained in the Investment Agreement), the Company extended a non-recourse loan Holders of at least 60% in aggregate principal amount of the then outstanding Subordinated Obligations (as defined in the Investment Agreement to include the obligations under the Notes) may declare the principal amount of \$the Notes to be immediately due and payable.1.0 million at an interest rate of In the

8.00 108% per annum to Mr. Severson. The loan was paid in full by Mr. Severson during December 2022.

---

20. case of fundamental change as defined in the Investment Agreement prior to the conversion or Subsequent Events maturity of the Notes, the Company is required to repay the Notes immediately prior to the consummation of such fundamental change in an amount equal to the aggregate principal amount of such Notes, plus any accrued and unpaid interest thereon.

### ***Letter Agreements***

On February 3, 2023 January 16, 2024, in connection with the Investments, each of AT&T Services, Inc. ("AT&T Services"), Google and Vodafone Group Services have entered into letter agreements with AST LLC entered into and the Company (the "Letter Agreements").

#### ***AT&T Letter Agreement***

The letter agreement between AT&T Services, the Company and AST LLC provides, among other things, that AT&T Services will make a Launch Services Agreement (the "2023 Launch Agreement") with Space Exploration Technologies Corp. ("SpaceX") relating to non-refundable \$20.0 million commercial payment for prepaid service revenue, creditable against future service revenue of AST LLC, due after the launch and successful initial operation of the first five Block 1 BB commercial satellites. The 2023 Launch AT&T Services also submitted a purchase order under a separate agreement for purchase of network equipment from AST LLC to support planned commercial service.

Under the letter agreement, the Company is required to use reasonable best efforts to cause the Stockholders' Agreement superseded both of the March 3, 2022 Multi-Launch Agreement Company, dated April 6, 2021 to be amended such that AT&T Services shall have the right to nominate, and the March 3, 2022 BlueBird 1 Launch parties to such Stockholders' Agreement agree to vote for and cause the appointment of, any representative of AT&T Services that it determines in its sole discretion to (i) serve as a non-voting observer to the Company's board of directors or (ii) serve as a director to the Company's board of directors.

#### ***Google Letter Agreement***

AST LLC has entered into a letter agreement with Google whereby the parties will negotiate and execute a definitive agreement to provide, among other things, certain services to each other and have agreed to collaborate on product development, testing and implementation plans for SpaceMobile network connectivity on Android devices.

#### ***Vodafone Letter Agreement***

The letter agreement between Vodafone Group Services and AST LLC provides, among other things, for an initial revenue commitment of \$25.0 million to AST LLC to be paid by Vodafone Group Services over a two and a half year period to be defined in a future definitive agreement for AST LLC to provide connectivity services. Vodafone also submitted a purchase order for purchase of network equipment from AST LLC to support planned commercial service.

#### **January 2024 Common Stock Offering**

On January 23, 2024, the parties. Company issued 32,258,064 shares of Class A Common Stock in a public offering and received proceeds of \$93.6 million, net of underwriting commissions of \$6.0 million and transaction costs of \$0.4 million. The exact timing Company provided a 30-day option to the underwriting agent to purchase up to an additional 4,838,709 shares of Class A Common Stock (the "Option Shares") from the Company on the same terms and conditions. On January 25, 2024, the Option Shares were exercised in full. The offering of the launch, which is Option Shares closed on January 29, 2024 for proceeds of \$14.1 million, net of underwriting commissions of \$0.9 million. Proceeds from the sale of the Company's Class A common stock under the January 2024 Common Stock Offering were and are expected to carry five Block 1 BB satellites, is contingent on a number of factors, including satisfactory and timely completion of construction and testing of the five Block 1 BB satellites and other factors, many of which are beyond the Company's control. be used for general corporate purposes.

#### **Item 16. Form 10-K Summary**

None.

84 109

#### **SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

**AST SPACEMOBILE, INC.**

By: */s/ ABEL AVELLAN*

Chairman and Chief Executive Officer

Principal Executive Officer

KNOW ALL THESE PRESENT, that each person whose signature appears below constitutes and appoints Abel Avellan, Sean Wallace and Shanti Gupta, and each of them, his or her true and lawful attorneys-in-fact and agents, and with power of substitution and resubstitution, for him/her and in his/her name, place and stead, and in any and all capacities, to sign the Annual Report on Form 10-K of AST SpaceMobile, Inc. for the fiscal year ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**, to sign any and all amendments thereto, and to file such Annual Report and amendments, with all exhibits thereto, and other

documents in connection therewith, with the Securities and Exchange Commission, granting unto said attorneys-in-fact and agents, and each of them, full power and authority to do and perform each and every act and thing requisite or necessary to be done in and about the premises, as fully to all intents and purposes as he/she might or could do in person, hereby ratifying and confirming all that said attorneys-in-fact and agents or either of them, or their or his substitute or substitutes, may lawfully do or cause to be done by virtue hereof.

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

<u>Signature</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Date</u>
/s/ ABEL AVELLAN <hr/> <b>Abel Avellan</b>	Chairman and Chief Executive Officer Principal Executive Officer and Director	March 31, 2023 April 1, 2024
/s/ SEAN WALLACE <hr/> <b>Sean Wallace</b>	Chief Financial Officer Principal Financial Officer	March 31, 2023 April 1, 2024
/s/ SHANTI GUPTA <hr/> <b>Shanti Gupta</b>	Chief Accounting Officer Principal Accounting Officer	March 31, 2023 April 1, 2024
/s/ TAREQ AMIN <hr/> <b>Tareq Amin</b>	Director	March 31, 2023
/s/ ADRIANA CISNEROS <hr/> <b>Adriana Cisneros</b>	Director	March 31, 2023 April 1, 2024
/s/ ALEXANDER COLEMAN <hr/> <b>Alexander Coleman</b>	Director	March 31, 2023 April 1, 2024
/s/ LUKE IBBETSON <hr/> <b>Luke Ibbetson</b>	Director	March 31, 2023 April 1, 2024

/s/ ED KNAPP

Director

March 31, 2023

April 1,  
2024

---

Ed Knapp

85

---

M  
a  
r  
c  
h  
3  
1  
1  
2  
0  
2  
3  
A  
p  
r  
i  
l  
1  
,  
2  
0  
2  
4

---

Hiroshi Mikitani

110

---

/s/ RONALD RUBIN

Director

March 31, 2023 April 1,  
2024

Ronald Rubin

/s/ RICHARD SARNOFF

Director

March 31, 2023 April 1,  
2024

Richard Sarnoff

/s/ JULIO A. TORRES

Director

March 31, 2023 April 1,  
2024

Julio A. Torres

86111

---

#### EXHIBIT 4.1

#### DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES

Unless the context otherwise requires, references in this exhibit to "we," "our," "AST SpaceMobile" and the "Company" refer to the business and operations of AST SpaceMobile, Inc. (formerly known as New Providence Acquisitions Corp.) and its consolidated subsidiaries.

The following summary of the material terms of our capital stock is not intended to be a complete summary of the rights and preferences of such securities and is qualified in its entirety by reference to our second Certificate of Incorporation (the "Charter"), our amended and restated Bylaws (the "Bylaws") and the Warrant Agreement, dated as of September 13, 2019, between Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company and the Company (the "Warrant Agreement"), all of which are attached as exhibits to our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended December 31, 2022 (the "Annual Report"). The summary below is also qualified by reference to the provisions of the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (the "DGCL"), as applicable. You are encouraged to read the applicable provisions of the DGCL, the Charter and the Bylaws in their entirety for a complete description of the rights and preferences of our securities.

#### Authorized and Outstanding Capital Stock

Our Charter authorizes the issuance of 1,225,000,000 shares, of which 800,000,000 shares are shares of Class A common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share ("Class A Common Stock"), 200,000,000 shares are shares of Class B common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share ("Class B Common Stock"), 125,000,000 shares are shares of Class C common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share ("Class C Common Stock", and, together with the Class A Common Stock and Class B Common Stock, the "Common Stock"), 100,000,000 shares are shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.0001 per share with such designation, rights and preferences as may be determined from time to time by the Company's board of directors (the "Board of Directors").

On February 16, 2023, we filed a petition in the Delaware Court of Chancery pursuant to Section 205 of the DGCL seeking (i) the validation of the April 1, 2021 stockholder vote approving the proposal to amend and restate our certificate of incorporation, in the current form of our Charter (including its filing and effectiveness, in each case as of April 6, 2021) (the "Charter Proposal"), and (ii) the validation and declaration of effectiveness of (a) our Charter and (b) the securities issued or to be issued in reliance on the approval of the Charter and/or the Charter Proposal, as of the respective dates of issuance to resolve any uncertainty with respect to those matters (captioned, *In re AST SpaceMobile, Inc.*, C.A. No. 2023-0202-LWW (Del. Ch.)). On March 14, 2023, the Court of Chancery approved our request for relief and entered an order under Section 205 of the DGCL.

As of **March 28, 2023** **March 28, 2024**, we had approximately **71,877,559** **138,132,310** shares of Class A Common Stock, **50,041,757** **39,747,448** shares of Class B Common Stock, 78,163,078 shares of Class C Common Stock and warrants to purchase 17,597,600 shares of Class A Common Stock, issued and outstanding. As of such date, there were **21** **25** holders of record of Class A Common Stock, **six** **four** holders of record of Class B Common Stock, one holder of record of Class C Common Stock and five holders of record of warrants.

## Common Stock

### Voting

Under our Charter, holders of Class A Common Stock, Class B Common Stock and Class C Common Stock will vote together as a single class on all matters submitted to the stockholders for their vote or approval, except as required by applicable law. Holders of Class A Common Stock and Class B Common Stock are entitled to one vote per share on all matters submitted to the stockholders for their vote or approval. Prior to the Sunset Date, the holders of Class C Common Stock are entitled to the lesser of (i) 10 votes per share and (ii) the Class C Share Voting Amount on all matters submitted to stockholders for their vote or approval. From and after the Sunset Date, which, as defined in the Stockholders' Agreement, is the earliest to occur of (i) the retirement or resignation of Abel Avellan, AST SpaceMobile's Founder, Chairman and Chief Executive Officer ("Avellan") from the Board of Directors, (ii) the date on which Avellan and his permitted transferees beneficially own less than 20% of the Class A Common Stock that Avellan beneficially owns as of immediately after the closing of the initial business combination (the "Business

---

## EXHIBIT 4.1

Combination") contemplated by that certain Equity Purchase Agreement, dated as of December 15, 2020, by and among AST & Science LLC ("AST & Science"), New Providence Acquisition Corp. ("NPA"), New Providence Management LLC, the AST Existing Equityholder Representative and the AST Existing Equityholders (the "Equity Purchase Agreement", and such closing of the Business Combination, the "Closing") and (iii) Avellan's death or permanent incapacitation, holders of Class C Common Stock will be entitled to one vote per share.

As of **March 31, 2022** **March 28, 2024**, Avellan and his permitted transferees control, as a group, approximately **86.5%** **81.5%** of the combined voting power of the Common Stock as a result of their ownership of all of the Class C Common Stock. Accordingly, Avellan controls the Company's business policies and affairs and can control any action requiring the general approval of its stockholders, including the election of our Board of Directors, the adoption of amendments to its certificate of incorporation and bylaws and approval of any merger or sale of substantially all of its assets. Until the Sunset Date, Avellan will continue to control the outcome of matters submitted to the stockholders.

#### *Dividends*

The holders of Class A Common Stock are entitled to receive dividends, as and if declared by our Board of Directors out of legally available funds. With respect to stock dividends, holders of Class A Common Stock must receive Class A Common Stock.

The holders of Class B Common Stock and Class C Common Stock will not have any right to receive dividends other than stock dividends consisting of shares of Class B Common Stock or Class C Common Stock, as applicable, in each case paid proportionally with respect to each outstanding share of Class B Common Stock or Class C Common Stock.

#### *Liquidation or Dissolution*

Upon our liquidation or dissolution, the holders of all classes of Common Stock are entitled to their respective par value, and the holders of Class A Common Stock will then be entitled to share ratably in those of our assets that are legally available for distribution to stockholders after payment of liabilities and subject to the prior rights of any holders of preferred stock then outstanding. Other than their par value, the holders of Class B Common Stock and Class C Common Stock will not have any right to receive a distribution upon a liquidation or dissolution of the Company.

#### *Conversion, Transferability and Exchange*

Subject to the terms of the Fifth Amended and Restated Limited Liability Company Operating Agreement of AST & Science (the "A&R Operating Agreement"), the members of AST & Science (other than the Company) may from time to time cause AST & Science to redeem any or all of their units of ownership interest in AST & Science which entitles the holder thereof to the distributions, allocations, and other rights under the A&R Operating Agreement (the "AST Common Units") in exchange for, at the Company's election (subject to certain exceptions), either cash (based on the market price for a share of the Class A Common Stock) (the "Existing Equityholder Cash Out") or shares of Class A Common Stock (the "Existing Equityholder Share Settlement"); provided that the Company's election to effect such redemption as an Existing Equityholder Cash Out or an Existing Equityholder Share Settlement must be approved by a committee of the our Board of Directors comprised solely of directors who were not nominated pursuant to the Stockholders' Agreement or other contractual right by, and are not otherwise affiliated with, holders of Class B Common Stock or Class C Common Stock. At the Company's election, such transaction may be effectuated via a direct exchange of Class A Common Stock or cash by the Company for the redeemed AST Common Units (an "Existing Equityholder Direct Exchange").

Our Charter provides that (a) if a holder of Class B Common Stock exercises either the Existing Equityholder Cash Out, or the Existing Equityholder Share Settlement or Existing Equityholder Direct Exchange (collectively, the "Existing Equityholder

Conversion"), then the number of shares of Class B Common Stock held by such holder equal to the number of AST Common Units so redeemed, cashed out or exchanged will automatically be cancelled by the Company for no consideration and (b) if a holder of Class C Common Stock (i) exercises the Existing Equityholder Cash Out or (ii) exercises the Existing Equityholder Share Settlement or Existing Equityholder Direct Exchange and subsequently transfers the Class A Common Stock issued in connection with such redemption and exchange to a

---

## EXHIBIT 4.1

person or entity other than Avellan and his permitted transferees, then the number of Class C Common Stock held by such holder equal to the number of AST Common Units so redeemed and exchanged then transferred or cashed out will automatically be cancelled by the Company for no consideration. If Avellan and his permitted transferees exercise the Existing Equityholder Conversion, then the voting power of the Class C Common Stock is reduced commensurate with the voting power of the newly issued Class A Common Stock. The voting power of the Class C Common Stock will be further adjusted if Avellan or his permitted transferees transfers Class A Common Stock to a person or entity that is not Avellan or his permitted transferees.

We may not issue Class B Common Stock or Class C Common Stock such that after the issuance of Class B Common Stock or Class C Common Stock the holder of such stock does not hold an identical number of AST Common Units.

### *Other Provisions*

None of the Class A Common Stock, Class B Common Stock or Class C Common Stock has any pre-emptive or other subscription rights.

### *Preferred Stock*

We are authorized to issue up to 100,000,000 shares of preferred stock. Our Board of Directors is authorized, subject to limitations prescribed by Delaware law and our Charter, to determine the terms and conditions of the preferred stock, including whether the shares of preferred stock will be issued in one or more series, the number of shares to be included in each series and the powers (including the voting power), designations, preferences and rights of the shares. Our Board of Directors also will be authorized to designate any qualifications, limitations or restrictions on the shares without any further vote or action by the stockholders. The issuance of preferred stock may have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control of the Company and may adversely affect the voting and other rights of the holders of Class A Common Stock, Class B Common Stock and Class C Common Stock, which could have a negative impact on the market price of the Class A Common Stock.

### **Redeemable Warrants**

#### *Public Warrants*

Each whole warrant entitles the registered holder to purchase one share of Class A Common Stock at a price of \$11.50 per share, subject to adjustment as discussed below, at any time commencing 30 days after the completion of the Business

Combination. Pursuant to the Warrant Agreement, a warrant holder may exercise its warrants only for a whole number of shares of Class A Common Stock. This means that only a whole warrant may be exercised at any given time by a warrant holder. The warrants will expire on April 6, 2026, five years after the completion of the Business Combination, at 5:00 p.m., New York City time, or earlier upon redemption or liquidation.

We are not obligated to deliver any shares of Class A Common Stock pursuant to the exercise of a warrant and will have no obligation to settle such warrant exercise unless a registration statement under the Securities Act with respect to the shares of Class A Common Stock underlying the warrants is then effective and a prospectus relating thereto is current, subject to us satisfying our obligations described below with respect to registration. No warrant will be exercisable and we will not be obligated to issue shares of Class A Common Stock upon exercise of a warrant unless, if at the time, the Class A Common Stock issuable upon such warrant exercise has been registered, qualified or deemed to be exempt under the securities laws of the state of residence of the registered holder of the warrants. In the event that the conditions in the two immediately preceding sentences are not satisfied with respect to a warrant, the holder of such warrant will not be entitled to exercise such warrant and such warrant may have no value and expire worthless. In no event will we be required to net cash settle any warrant.

We are obligated to file and maintain an effective registration statement under the Securities Act covering the shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants and to use commercially reasonable best efforts to cause such registration statement to maintain the effectiveness of such registration statement, and a current prospectus relating thereto, until the expiration of the warrants in accordance with the provisions of the Warrant Agreement. Pursuant to such obligations, on May 6, 2021, we filed a Form S-1 covering the shares of Class A Common

---

#### EXHIBIT 4.1

Stock issuable upon exercise and on June 10, 2022, we filed a Form S-3 covering the shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon exercise, which was declared effective on July 1, 2022. Notwithstanding the above, if Class A Common Stock is at the time of any exercise of a warrant not listed on a national securities exchange such that it satisfies the definition of a "covered security" under Section 18(b)(1) of the Securities Act, we may, at our option, require holders of public warrants who exercise their warrants to do so on a "cashless basis" in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act and, in the event we so elect, we will not be required to file or maintain in effect a registration statement, and in the event we do not so elect, we will use our commercially reasonable best efforts to register or qualify the shares under applicable blue sky laws to the extent an exemption is not available.

We may call the warrants for redemption:

- in whole and not in part;
- at a price of \$0.01 per warrant;

- upon not less than 30 days' prior written notice of redemption to each warrant holder; and
- if, and only if, the last reported sale price of the Class A Common Stock equals or exceeds \$18.00 per share (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) for any 20 trading days within a 30-trading day period ending three trading days before we send the notice of redemption to the warrant holders.

We may not exercise our redemption right if the issuance of shares of Class A Common Stock upon exercise of the warrants is not exempt from registration or qualification under applicable state blue sky laws or we are unable to effect such registration or qualification.

We have established the last of the redemption criterion discussed above to prevent a redemption call unless there is at the time of the call a significant premium to the warrant exercise price. If the foregoing conditions are satisfied and we issue a notice of redemption of the warrants, each warrant holder will be entitled to exercise its warrant prior to the scheduled redemption date. However, the price of the Class A Common Stock may fall below the \$18.00 redemption trigger price (as adjusted for stock splits, stock dividends, reorganizations, recapitalizations and the like) as well as the \$11.50 warrant exercise price after the redemption notice is issued.

If we call the warrants for redemption as described above, our management will have the option to require any holder that wishes to exercise its warrant to do so on a "cashless basis." In determining whether to require all holders to exercise their warrants on a "cashless basis," our management will consider, among other factors, its cash position, the number of warrants that are outstanding and the dilutive effect on its stockholders of issuing the maximum number of shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of our warrants. If our management takes advantage of this option, all holders of warrants would pay the exercise price by surrendering their warrants for that number of shares of Class A Common Stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Class A Common Stock underlying the warrants, multiplied by the difference between the exercise price of the warrants and the "fair market value" (as defined below) over the exercise price of the warrants by (y) the fair market value. The "fair market value" shall mean the average reported last sale price of the Class A Common Stock for the 10 trading days ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the notice of redemption is sent to the holders of warrants. If we select this option, the notice of redemption will contain the information necessary to calculate the number of shares of Class A Common Stock to be received upon exercise of the warrants, including the "fair market value" in such case. Requiring a cashless exercise in this manner will reduce the number of shares to be issued and thereby lessen the dilutive effect of a warrant redemption. We believe this feature is an attractive option to us if we do not need the cash from the exercise of the warrants. If we call our warrants for redemption and our management does not take advantage of this option, New Providence Acquisition Management LLC, a Delaware limited liability company (the "Sponsor") and its permitted transferees would still be entitled to exercise their private placement warrants for cash or on a cashless basis using the same formula described above that other warrant holders would have been required to use had all warrant holders been required to exercise their warrants on a cashless basis, as described in more detail below.

A holder of a warrant may notify us in writing in the event it elects to be subject to a requirement that such holder will not have the right to exercise such warrant, to the extent that after giving effect to such exercise, such person (together with such person's affiliates), to the warrant agent's actual knowledge, would beneficially own in excess of 4.9% or 9.8% (or such other amount as a holder may specify) of the shares of Class A Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to such exercise.

If the number of outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock is increased by a stock dividend payable in shares of Class A Common Stock, or by a split-up of shares of Class A Common Stock or other similar event, then, on the effective date of such stock dividend, split-up or similar event, the number of shares of Class A Common Stock issuable on exercise of each warrant will be increased in proportion to such increase in the outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock. A rights offering to holders of Class A Common Stock entitling holders to purchase shares of Class A Common Stock at a price less than the fair market value will be deemed a stock dividend of a number of shares of Class A Common Stock equal to the product of (i) the number of shares of Class A Common Stock actually sold in such rights offering (or issuable under any other equity securities sold in such rights offering that are convertible into or exercisable for Class A Common Stock) and (ii) one (1) minus the quotient of (x) the price per share of Class A Common Stock paid in such rights offering divided by (y) the fair market value. For these purposes (i) if the rights offering is for securities convertible into or exercisable for Class A Common Stock, in determining the price payable for Class A Common Stock, there will be taken into account any consideration received for such rights, as well as any additional amount payable upon exercise or conversion and (ii) fair market value means the volume weighted average price of Class A Common Stock as reported during the ten (10) trading day period ending on the trading day prior to the first date on which the shares of Class A Common Stock trade on the applicable exchange or in the applicable market, regular way, without the right to receive such rights.

In addition, if we, at any time while the warrants are outstanding and unexpired, pay a dividend or make a distribution in cash, securities or other assets to the holders of Class A Common Stock on account of such shares of Class A Common Stock (or other shares of our capital stock into which the warrants are convertible), other than (i) as described above or, (ii) certain ordinary cash dividends (initially defined as up to \$0.50 per share in a 365 day period), then the warrant exercise price will be decreased, effective immediately after the effective date of such event, by the amount of cash and/or the fair market value of any securities or other assets paid on each share of Class A Common Stock in respect of such event.

If the number of outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock is decreased by a consolidation, combination, reverse stock split or reclassification of shares of Class A Common Stock or other similar event, then, on the effective date of such consolidation, combination, reverse stock split, reclassification or similar event, the number of shares of Class A Common Stock issuable on exercise of each warrant will be decreased in proportion to such decrease in outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock.

Whenever the number of shares of Class A Common Stock purchasable upon the exercise of the warrants is adjusted, as described above, the warrant exercise price will be adjusted by multiplying the warrant exercise price immediately prior to such adjustment by a fraction (x) the numerator of which will be the number of shares of Class A Common Stock purchasable upon the exercise of the warrants immediately prior to such adjustment, and (y) the denominator of which will be the number of shares of Class A Common Stock so purchasable immediately thereafter.

In case of any reclassification or reorganization of the outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock (other than those described above or that solely affects the par value of such shares of Class A Common Stock), or in the case of any merger or consolidation of us with or into another entity (other than a consolidation or merger in which we are the continuing corporation and that does not result in any reclassification or reorganization of our outstanding shares of Class A Common Stock), or in the case of any sale or conveyance to another corporation or entity of our assets or other property as an entirety or substantially as an entirety in connection with which we are dissolved, the holders of the warrants will thereafter have the right to purchase and receive, upon the basis and upon the terms and conditions specified in the warrants and in lieu of the shares of Class A Common Stock immediately theretofore purchasable and receivable upon the exercise of the rights represented thereby, the kind and amount of shares of stock or other securities or property (including cash) receivable upon such reclassification, reorganization, merger or consolidation, or upon a dissolution following any such sale or transfer, that the holder of the warrants would have received if such holder had exercised their warrants immediately prior to such event. If less than 70% of the consideration receivable by the holders of Class A Common Stock in such a transaction is payable in the form of Class

---

#### **EXHIBIT 4.1**

A Common Stock in the successor entity that is listed for trading on a national securities exchange or is quoted in an established over-the-counter market, or is to be so listed for trading or quoted immediately following such event, and if the registered holder of the warrant properly exercises the warrant within thirty days following public disclosure of such transaction, the warrant exercise price will be reduced as specified in the Warrant Agreement based on the Black-Scholes value (as defined in the Warrant Agreement) of the warrant. The purpose of such exercise price reduction is to provide additional value to holders of the warrants when an extraordinary transaction occurs during the exercise period of the warrants pursuant to which the holders of the warrants otherwise do not receive the full potential value of the warrants in order to determine and realize the option value component of the warrant. This formula is to compensate the warrant holder for the loss of the option value portion of the warrant due to the requirement that the warrant holder exercise the warrant within 30 days of the event. The Black-Scholes model (as defined in the Warrant Agreement) is an accepted pricing model for estimating fair market value where no quoted market price for an instrument is available.

The warrants are issued in registered form under the Warrant Agreement. The Warrant Agreement provides that the terms of the warrants may be amended without the consent of any holder to cure any ambiguity or correct any defective provision, but requires the approval by the holders of at least 65% of the then outstanding public warrants to make any other change.

The warrants may be exercised upon surrender of the warrant certificate on or prior to the expiration date at the offices of the warrant agent, with the exercise form on the reverse side of the warrant certificate completed and executed as indicated, accompanied by full payment of the exercise price (or on a cashless basis, if applicable), by certified or official bank check payable to us, for the number of warrants being exercised. The warrant holders do not have the rights or privileges of holders of

Class A Common Stock and any voting rights until they exercise their warrants and receive shares of Class A Common Stock. After the issuance of shares of Class A Common Stock upon exercise of the warrants, each holder will be entitled to one vote for each share held of record on all matters to be voted on by stockholders.

No fractional shares will be issued upon exercise of the warrants. If, upon exercise of the warrants, a holder would be entitled to receive a fractional interest in a share, we will, upon exercise, round down to the nearest whole number of shares of Class A Common Stock to be issued to the warrant holder.

#### *Private Placement Warrants*

The private placement warrants (including the shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the private placement warrants) are not redeemable by us so long as they are held by the Sponsor or its permitted transferees. The Sponsor, or its permitted transferees, has the option to exercise the private placement warrants on a cashless basis. Other than these terms and as described below, the private placement warrants have terms and provisions that are identical to those of the public warrants, including as to exercise price, exercisability and exercise period. If the private placement warrants are held by holders other than the Sponsor or its permitted transferees, the private placement warrants will be redeemable by us and exercisable by the holders on the same basis as the public warrants.

If holders of the private placement warrants elect to exercise them on a cashless basis, they would pay the exercise price by surrendering their warrants for that number of shares of Class A Common Stock equal to the quotient obtained by dividing (x) the product of the number of shares of Class A Common Stock underlying the private placement warrants, multiplied by the excess of the "fair market value" (defined below) over the exercise price of the private placement warrants by (y) the fair market value. The "fair market value" shall mean the average reported last sale price of the Class A Common Stock for the 10 trading days ending on the third trading day prior to the date on which the notice of warrant exercise is sent to the warrant agent.

#### **Exclusive Forum**

Our Bylaws provide that, to the fullest extent permitted by law, and unless we provide notice in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware (or, in the event that the Court of Chancery does not have jurisdiction, the federal district court for the District of Delaware) will be the sole and exclusive forum for (i) any derivative action or proceeding brought on our behalf, (ii) any action asserting a claim of

---

#### **EXHIBIT 4.1**

breach of a fiduciary duty owed to us or to our stockholders by any of our directors, officers, employees or agents, (iii) any action asserting a claim arising pursuant to any provision of the DGCL, our Charter or Bylaws or as to which the DGCL confers jurisdiction on the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware or (iv) any action asserting a claim governed by the internal affairs doctrine, in each such case subject to such Court of Chancery having personal jurisdiction over the indispensable parties named as defendants therein. Our Bylaws further provide that the federal district courts of the United States will be the

exclusive forum for resolving any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act. There is uncertainty as to whether a court would enforce such a provision relating to causes of action arising under the Securities Act, and investors cannot waive compliance with the federal securities laws and the rules and regulations thereunder. The clauses described above will not apply to suits brought to enforce a duty or liability created by the Exchange Act or any other claim for which the federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction.

#### **Anti-Takeover Effects of Provisions of our Charter and Bylaws**

The provisions of our Charter and Bylaws and of the DGCL summarized below may have an anti-takeover effect and may delay, defer or prevent a tender offer or takeover attempt that you might consider in your best interest, including an attempt that might result in your receipt of a premium over the market price for your shares of Class A Common Stock.

Our Charter and Bylaws will contain certain provisions that are intended to enhance the likelihood of continuity and stability in the composition of our Board of Directors and that may have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing our future takeover or change in control unless such takeover or change in control is approved by our Board of Directors.

These provisions include:

*Action by Written Consent; Special Meetings of Stockholders.* Our Charter provides that stockholder action can be taken only at an annual or special meeting of stockholders and cannot be taken by written consent in lieu of a meeting. Our Charter and Bylaws also provide that, subject to any special rights of the holders of any series of preferred stock and except as otherwise required by applicable law, special meetings of the stockholders can only be called by our Board of Directors, the chairman of our Board of Directors, or, until the earlier of (i) the Sunset Date or (ii) the time we are no longer a "controlled company," by our secretary at the request of holders representing a majority of the total voting power of our issued and outstanding capital stock entitled to vote in the election of directors, voting together as a single class. Except as described above, stockholders are not permitted to call a special meeting or to require our Board of Directors to call a special meeting.

*Advance Notice Procedures.* Our Bylaws establish an advance notice procedure for stockholder proposals to be brought before an annual meeting of our stockholders, and for stockholder nominations of persons for election to our Board of Directors to be brought before an annual or special meeting of stockholders. Stockholders at an annual meeting will only be able to consider proposals or nominations specified in the notice of meeting or brought before the meeting by or at the direction of our Board of Directors of directors or by a stockholder who was a stockholder of record on the record date for the meeting, who is entitled to vote at the meeting and who has given our Secretary timely written notice, in proper form, of the stockholder's intention to bring that business or nomination before the meeting. Although our Bylaws do not give our Board of Directors the power to approve or disapprove stockholder nominations of candidates or proposals regarding other business to be conducted at a special or annual meeting, as applicable, our Bylaws may have the effect of precluding the conduct of certain business at a meeting if the proper procedures are not followed or may discourage or deter a potential acquirer from conducting a solicitation of proxies to elect its own slate of directors or otherwise attempting to obtain control of us.

*Authorized but Unissued Shares.* Our authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock and preferred stock will be available for future issuance without stockholder approval, subject to, in the case of the Class A Common Stock, rules of the securities exchange on which the Class A Common Stock is listed. These additional shares may be utilized for a variety of corporate purposes, including future public offerings to raise additional capital, corporate acquisitions, in connection with the redemption or exchange of AST Common Units and employee benefit plans. The existence of authorized but unissued shares of Common Stock and preferred stock, coupled with the extraordinary voting right of

---

## EXHIBIT 4.1

the Class C Common Stock, could render more difficult or discourage an attempt to obtain control of a majority of our Common Stock by means of a proxy contest, tender offer, merger or otherwise.

*Business Combinations with Interested Stockholders.* Our Charter provides that we are not subject to Section 203 of the DGCL, an anti-takeover law. In general, Section 203 prohibits a publicly held Delaware corporation from engaging in a business combination, such as a merger, with an “interested stockholder” (which includes a person or group owning 15% or more of the corporation’s voting stock) for a period of three years following the date the person became an interested stockholder, unless (with certain exceptions) the business combination or the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder is approved in a prescribed manner. Accordingly, we are not subject to any anti-takeover effects of Section 203.

### **Limitations on Liability and Indemnification of Officers and Directors**

Our Bylaws limit the liability of our directors and officers to the fullest extent permitted by the DGCL and provides that we will provide them with customary indemnification and advancement and prepayment of expenses. We have entered into customary indemnification agreements with each of our executive officers and directors that provide them, in general, with customary indemnification in connection with their service to us or on our behalf.

Our Bylaws provide that, to the fullest extent permitted by law, and unless we provide notice in writing to the selection of an alternative forum, the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware will be the sole and exclusive forum for (i) any derivative action, suit or proceeding brought on our behalf, (ii) any action asserting a claim of breach of a fiduciary duty owed to us or to our stockholders by any of our directors, officers, employees or agents, (iii) any action, suit or proceeding arising pursuant to any provision of the DGCL or our Charter or Bylaws or (iv) any action, suit or proceeding asserting a claim against us governed by the internal affairs doctrine, in each such case subject to such Court of Chancery having personal jurisdiction over the indispensable parties named as defendants therein. Our Charter further provides that the federal district courts of the United States will be the exclusive forum for resolving any complaint asserting a cause of action arising under the Securities Act. There is uncertainty as to whether a court would enforce such a provision relating to causes of action arising under the Securities Act, and investors cannot waive compliance with the federal securities laws and the rules and regulations thereunder. The clauses described above will not apply to suits brought to enforce a duty or liability created by the Exchange Act or any other claim for which the federal courts have exclusive jurisdiction.

### **Registration Rights Agreements**

In connection with NPA’s IPO, we entered into that certain Registration and Stockholder Rights Agreement, dated as of September 13, 2019, by and among the Company, the Sponsor and the other parties thereto (collectively, the “2019 Holders”, and such agreement, the “2019 Registration Rights Agreement”) pursuant to which we granted the 2019 Holders certain registration rights with respect to, among other things, the private placement warrants and the shares of Class A Common Stock that were issued at the Closing upon conversion of the 2019 Holders’ founder shares. The 2019 Holders of the majority of these securities are entitled to make up to three demands, excluding short form demands, that we register such securities. In addition, the 2019 Holders have certain “piggy-back” registration rights and rights to require us to register for resale such

securities pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act. We will bear the expenses incurred in connection with the filing of any such registration statements.

On December 16, 2020, we entered into subscription agreements with investors who participated in the Private Investment in Public Equity Investment (such investment, the “PIPE Investment”, such agreements, the “PIPE Subscription Agreements” and such investors, the “PIPE Investors”), pursuant to which we (i) issued an aggregate of 23,000,000 shares of Class A Common Stock to the PIPE Investors at the Closing and (ii) agreed to register such shares.

At the Closing, we entered into the Registration Rights Agreement, dated as of April 6, 2021, by and among the Company, the Sponsor and the Existing Equityholders (collectively, the “Holders”, and such agreement, the “2021 Registration Rights Agreement”) pursuant to which we granted the Holders certain registration rights with respect to the registrable securities of the Company. Among other things, the 2021 Registration Rights Agreement requires us to register the shares of Class A Common Stock issued in connection with the Business Combination and any shares of Class A Common Stock issued upon the redemption of any AST Common Units. The Holders are entitled to (i)

---

#### **EXHIBIT 4.1**

make a written demand for registration under the Securities Act of all or part of their shares of Class A Common Stock (up to a maximum of two demands in any 12-month period) and not more than five times in the aggregate and only if the offering will include registrable securities with a total offering price reasonably expected to exceed, in the aggregate, \$50 million, and (ii) “piggy-back” registration rights to registration statements filed following the Business Combination. We will bear all of the expenses incurred in connection with the filing of any such registration statement.

On January 16, 2024, we entered into a Convertible Security Investment Agreement (the “Investment Agreement”) with AT&T Venture Investments, LLC, Google LLC, and Vodafone Ventures Limited (together, the “Investors”), pursuant to which the Investors purchased subordinated convertible notes for an aggregate principal amount of \$110.0 million (such notes, the “Notes”). On January 22, 2024, in connection with the Investment Agreement, we entered into an Investor and Registration Rights Agreements with each of the Investors pursuant to which we granted the Investors certain registration rights with respect to their registrable securities of the Company. Among other things, the Investor and Registration Rights Agreements requires us to register the shares of Class A Common Stock issuable upon conversion of the Notes. The Investors will be entitled to (i) make a written demand for registration under the Securities Act of all or part of their shares of Class A Common Stock (up to a maximum of three demands) and only if the offering will include registrable securities with a total offering price reasonably expected to exceed, in the aggregate, \$50 million, and (ii) “piggy-back” registration rights to registration statements filed in the future. We will bear all of the expenses incurred in connection with the filing of any such registration statement.

#### **Transfer Agent and Registrar**

The transfer agent for our Common Stock is Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company. Each person investing in our Class A Common Stock held through The Depository Trust Company must rely on the procedures thereof and on institutions that have accounts therewith to exercise any rights of a holder of our Class A Common Stock.

For as long as any shares of our Class A Common Stock are listed on The Nasdaq Stock Market LLC (the "Nasdaq") or on any other stock exchange operating in the United States, the laws of the State of New York shall apply to the property law aspects of our Class A Common Stock (including securities exercisable for or convertible into our Class A Common Stock) reflected in the register administered by our transfer agent.

We have listed shares of our Class A Common Stock in registered form and such shares, through the transfer agent, will not be certificated. We have appointed Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company as our agent in New York to maintain our stockholders' register on behalf of our Board of Directors and to act as transfer agent and registrar for our Class A Common Stock. Shares of our Class A Common Stock are traded on Nasdaq in book-entry form.

The warrant agent for the warrants is Continental Stock Transfer & Trust Company.

#### **Listing of Class A Common Stock and Warrants**

Our Class A Common Stock and warrants are listed on Nasdaq under the symbols "ASTS" and "ASTSW," respectively.

---

#### **EXHIBIT 21.1**

#### **SUBSIDIARIES OF AST SPACEMOBILE, INC. \***

<b>Entity Name</b>	<b>Jurisdiction of Formation</b>
AST & Science, LLC	Delaware
AST SpaceMobile Services, LLC (f/k/a AST Services, LLC)	Florida
AST Space Mobile USA LLC (f/k/a AST & Defense, LLC)	Delaware
AST & Science Texas LLC	Texas
AST & Science Iberia, Sociedad Limitada Unipersonal	Spain
AST SpaceMobile UK Limited	United Kingdom
AST & Science Israel Ltd.	Israel
AST SpaceMobile India Private Limited	India

\* AST SpaceMobile, Inc. has elected to omit the names of certain subsidiaries. None of the omitted subsidiaries, considered either alone or together with the other omitted subsidiaries of its immediate parent, constitute a "Significant Subsidiary" as set forth in Rule 1-02(w) of Regulation S-X.

**Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the registration statements (Nos. 333-264783, and 333-265512 and 333-268087) on Form S-3 and the registration statement (No. 333-257822) on Form S-8 of our report dated **March 31, 2023** **April 1, 2024**, with respect to the consolidated financial statements of AST SpaceMobile, Inc. and subsidiaries.

/s/ KPMG LLP

Miami, Florida

**March 31, 2023** **April 1, 2024**

**CERTIFICATION OF CHIEF EXECUTIVE OFFICER  
PURSUANT TO RULE 13A-14(A) UNDER THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934,  
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO SECTION 302 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

I, Abel Avellan, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of AST SpaceMobile, Inc. (formerly known as New Providence Acquisiti Corp.);
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the period

presented in this report;

4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) for the registrant and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under my supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared; and
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: **March 31, 2023** April 1, 2024

*/s/ Abel Avellan*

---

Abel Avellan

Chairman and Chief Executive Officer

Principal Executive Officer

**CERTIFICATION OF CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER  
PURSUANT TO RULE 13A-14(A) UNDER THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934,  
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO SECTION 302 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

I, Sean Wallace, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of AST SpaceMobile, Inc. (formerly known as New Providence Acquisition Corp.);
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the period presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) for the registrant and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under my supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared; and
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and

- b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: **March 31, 2023** **April 1, 2024**

*/s/ Sean Wallace*

---

Sean Wallace  
Chief Financial Officer  
Principal Financial Officer

---

**EXHIBIT 32.1**

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO  
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350  
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Annual Report of AST SpaceMobile, Inc. (formerly known as New Providence Acquisition Corp.) (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the annual period ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Report"), I, Abel Avellan, Chief Executive Officer of the Company, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. §1350, as added by §906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

1. The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
2. The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and result operations of the Company as of and for the period covered by the Report.

Dated: **March 31, 2023** **April 1, 2024**

*/s/ Abel Avellan*

---

Abel Avellan

Chairman and Chief Executive Officer  
Principal Executive Officer

---

**EXHIBIT 32.2**

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO  
18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350  
AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO  
SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Annual Report of AST SpaceMobile, Inc. (formerly known as New Providence Acquisition Corp.) (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the annual period ended **December 31, 2022** **December 31, 2023**, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Report"), I, Sean Wallace, Chief Financial Officer of the Company, certify, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. §1350, as added by §906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

1. The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
2. The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and result operations of the Company as of and for the period covered by the Report.

Dated: **March 31, 2023** **April 1, 2024**

*/s/ Sean Wallace*

---

Sean Wallace  
Chief Financial Officer  
Principal Financial Officer

---

**EXHIBIT 97.1**

**AST SPACEMOBILE, INC. POLICY FOR THE  
RECOVERY OF ERRONEOUSLY AWARDED INCENTIVE-BASED COMPENSATION**

**I. BACKGROUND**

AST SpaceMobile, Inc. (the “Company”) has adopted this policy (this “Policy”) to provide for the recovery or “clawback” of certain incentive compensation in the event of a Restatement. This Policy is intended to comply with, and will be interpreted to be consistent with, the requirements of the Nasdaq Stock Market (“Nasdaq”) Listing Rule 5608. Certain terms used in this Policy are defined in Section VIII below.

**II. STATEMENT OF POLICY**

The Company shall recover reasonably promptly the amount of erroneously awarded Incentive-Based Compensation in the event that the Company is required to prepare an accounting restatement due to the material noncompliance of the Company with any financial reporting requirement under the securities laws, including any required accounting restatement to correct an error in previously issued financial statements that is material to the previously issued financial statements, or that would result in a material misstatement if the error were corrected in the current period or left uncorrected in the current period (a “Restatement”).

The Company shall recover erroneously awarded Incentive-Based Compensation in compliance with this Policy except to the extent provided under Section V below.

**III. SCOPE OF POLICY**

**A. Persons Covered and Recovery Period.** This Policy applies to all Incentive-Based Compensation received by a person:

- after beginning service as an Executive Officer,
- who served as an Executive Officer at any time during the performance period for that Incentive-Based Compensation
- while the Company has a class of securities listed on a national securities exchange, and
- during the three completed fiscal years immediately preceding the date that the Company is required to prepare a Restatement (the “Recovery Period”).

Notwithstanding this look-back requirement, the Company is only required to apply this Policy to Incentive-Based Compensation received on or after October 2, 2023.

For purposes of this Policy, Incentive-Based Compensation shall be deemed “received” in the Company’s fiscal period during which the Financial Reporting Measure (as defined herein) specified in the Incentive-Based Compensation award is attained, even if the payment or grant of the Incentive-Based Compensation occurs after the end of that period.

**B. Transition Period.** In addition to the Recovery Period, this Policy applies to any transition period (that results from a change in the Company’s fiscal year) within or immediately following the Recovery Period (a “Transition Period”), provided that a Transition Period between the last day of the Company’s previous fiscal year end and the first day of the Company’s new fiscal year that comprises a period of nine to 12 months will be deemed a completed fiscal year.

**C. Determining the Recovery Period.** For purposes of determining the relevant Recovery Period, the date that the Company is required to prepare the Restatement is the earlier to occur of:

- the date the board of directors of the Company (the “Board”), a committee of the Board, or the officer or officers of the Company authorized to take such action if Board action is not required, concludes, or reasonably should have concluded, that the Company is required to prepare a Restatement, and
- the date a court, regulator, or other legally authorized body directs the Company to prepare a Restatement.

For clarity, the Company's obligation to recover erroneously awarded Incentive-Based Compensation under this Policy is not dependent on if or when a Restatement is filed.

**D. Method of Recovery.** The Committee will have discretion in determining how to accomplish recovery of erroneously awarded Incentive-Based Compensation under this Policy, recognizing that different means of recovery may be appropriate in different circumstances.

---

#### **IV. AMOUNT SUBJECT TO RECOVERY**

**A. Recoverable Amount.** The amount of Incentive-Based Compensation subject to recovery under this Policy is the amount of Incentive-Based Compensation received that exceeds the amount of Incentive-Based Compensation that otherwise would have been received had it been determined based on the restated amounts, computed without regard to any taxes paid.

**B. Covered Compensation Based on Stock Price or TSR.** For Incentive-Based Compensation based on stock price or total shareholder return ("TSR"), where the amount of erroneously awarded Incentive-Based Compensation is not subject to mathematical recalculation directly from the information in a Restatement, the recoverable amount shall be determined by the Compensation Committee of the Board (the "Committee") based on a reasonable estimate of the effect of the Restatement on the stock price or TSR upon which the Incentive-Based Compensation was received. In such event, the Company shall maintain documentation of the determination of that reasonable estimate and provide such documentation to Nasdaq.

#### **V. EXCEPTIONS**

The Company shall recover erroneously awarded Incentive-Based Compensation in compliance with this Policy except to the extent that the conditions set out below are met and the Committee has made a determination that recovery would be impracticable:

**A. Direct Expense Exceeds Recoverable Amount.** The direct expense paid to a third party to assist in enforcing this Policy would exceed the amount to be recovered; provided, however, that before concluding it would be impracticable to recover any amount of erroneously awarded Incentive-Based Compensation based on expense of enforcement, the Company shall make a reasonable attempt to recover such erroneously awarded Incentive-Based Compensation, document such reasonable attempt(s) to recover, and provide that documentation to Nasdaq.

**B. Recovery from Certain Tax-Qualified Retirement Plans.** Recovery would likely cause an otherwise tax-qualified retirement plan, under which benefits are broadly available to employees of the Company, to fail to meet the requirements of 26 U.S.C. 401(a)(13) or 26 U.S.C. 411(a) and regulations thereunder.

#### **VI. PROHIBITION AGAINST INDEMNIFICATION**

Notwithstanding the terms of any indemnification arrangement or insurance policy with any individual covered by this Policy, the Company shall not indemnify any Executive Officer or former Executive Officer against the loss of erroneously awarded Incentive-Based Compensation, including any payment or reimbursement for the cost of insurance obtained by any such covered individual to fund amounts recoverable under this Policy.

#### **VII. DISCLOSURE**

The Company shall file all disclosures with respect to this Policy and recoveries under this Policy in accordance with the requirements of the U.S. Federal securities laws, including the disclosure required by the applicable Securities and Exchange

Commission ("SEC") filings.

### **VIII. DEFINITIONS**

Unless the context otherwise requires, the following definitions apply for purposes of this Policy:

"Executive Officer" means the Company's president, principal financial officer, principal accounting officer (or if there is no such accounting officer, the controller), any vice-president of the Company in charge of a principal business unit, division, or function (such as sales, administration, or finance), any other officer who performs a policy-making function, or any other person who performs similar policy-making functions for the Company. Executive officers of the Company's subsidiaries are deemed Executive Officers of the Company if they perform such policy-making functions for the Company. Policy-making function is not intended to include policy-making functions that are not significant. Identification of an Executive Officer for purposes of this Policy will include at a minimum executive officers identified pursuant to 17 CFR 229.401(b).

"Financial Reporting Measures" means any of the following: (i) measures that are determined and presented in accordance with the accounting principles used in preparing the Company's financial statements, and any measures that are derived wholly or in part from such measures, (ii) stock price and (iii) TSR. A Financial Reporting Measure need not be presented within the Company's financial statements or included in a filing with the SEC.

"Incentive-Based Compensation" means any compensation that is granted, earned, or vested based wholly or in part upon the attainment of a Financial Reporting Measure.

---

### **IX. ADMINISTRATION; AMENDMENT; TERMINATION.**

All determinations under this Policy will be made by the Committee, including determinations regarding how any recovery under this Policy is effected. Any determinations of the Committee will be final, binding and conclusive and need not be uniform with respect to each individual covered by this Policy.

The Committee may amend this Policy from time to time and may terminate this Policy at any time, in each case in its sole discretion.

### **X. EFFECTIVENESS; OTHER RECOUPMENT RIGHTS**

This Policy shall be effective as of December 1, 2023. Any right of recoupment under this Policy is in addition to, and not in lieu of, any other remedies or rights of recoupment that may be available to the Company and its subsidiaries and affiliates under applicable law or pursuant to the terms of any similar policy or similar provision in any employment agreement, equity award agreement or similar agreement.

---

## DISCLAIMER

THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THE REFINITIV CORPORATE DISCLOSURES DELTA REPORT™ IS A COMPARISON OF TWO FINANCIALS PERIODIC REPORTS. THERE MAY BE MATERIAL ERRORS, OMISSIONS, OR INACCURACIES IN THE REPORT INCLUDING THE TEXT AND THE COMPARISON DATA AND TABLES. IN NO WAY DOES REFINITIV OR THE APPLICABLE COMPANY ASSUME ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY INVESTMENT OR OTHER DECISIONS MADE BASED UPON THE INFORMATION PROVIDED IN THIS REPORT. USERS ARE ADVISED TO REVIEW THE APPLICABLE COMPANY'S ACTUAL SEC FILINGS BEFORE MAKING ANY INVESTMENT OR OTHER DECISIONS.

©2024, Refinitiv. All rights reserved. Patents Pending.